

## ALTIVAR 56

## Fan and Pump Drive

## Adjustable Speed Drive Controllers For Asynchronous Motors

## User's Manual

Variable Torque<br>1 to $100 \mathrm{hp}, 460 \mathrm{~V}$ and 1 to $50 \mathrm{hp}, 230 \mathrm{~V}$

## A DANGER

## HAZARDOUS VOLTAGE

- Read and understand this bulletin in its entirety before installing or operating ALTIVAR 56 drive controllers. Installation, adjustment, repair and maintenance of these drive controllers must be performed by qualified personnel.
- Disconnect all power before servicing drive controller. WAIT ONE MINUTE until DC bus capacitors discharge, then measure DC bus capacitor voltage between PA and $(-)$ terminals to verify DC voltage is less than 45 V (see page 42). The DC bus LED is not an accurate indication of the absence of DC bus voltage.
- DO NOT short across DC bus capacitors or touch unshielded components or terminal strip screw connections with voltage present.
- Install all covers and close door before applying power or starting and stopping the drive controller.
- User is responsible for conforming to all applicable code requirements with respect to grounding all equipment. For drive controller grounding points, refer to the terminal connection drawings on Figure 9 on page 22.
- Many parts in this drive controller, including printed wiring boards, operate at line voltage. DO NOT TOUCH. Use only electrically insulated tools.
Before servicing drive controller:
- Disconnect all power.
- Place a "DO NOT TURN ON" label on drive controller disconnect.
- Lock disconnect in open position.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

ALTIVAR is a trademark of Telemecanique S.A. or its successor-in-interest, Schneider Electric S.A
© 1996 Square D All Rights Reserved. This document may not be copied in whole or in part, or transferred to any other media without the written permission of Square D.

Electrical equipment should be serviced only by qualified electrical maintenance personnel. No responsibility is assumed by Square D for any consequences arising out of the use of this material.
Chapter 1 - Receiving and Installation .....  1
INTRODUCTION .....  2
HAZARD LABELING ..... 2
TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS ..... 3
Specifications ..... 4
DIMENSIONS \& WEIGHTS FOR WALL OR PANEL MOUNTING ..... 6
HANDLING DRIVE CONTROLLERS .....  8
PRELIMINARY INSPECTION ..... 8
NSTALLATION PRECAUTIONS ..... 9
MOUNTING IN GENERAL PURPOSE METAL ENCLOSURE ..... 10
Ventilation ..... 10
MOUNTING IN TYPE 12 (IP54) METAL ENCLOSURE ..... 12
Calculating Non-Ventilated Enclosure Size ..... 12
Ventilation ..... 13
Recess Mounting ..... 13
Chapter 2 - Wiring ..... 15
WIRING ..... 16
General Wiring Practices ..... 16
Branch Circuit Connections ..... 16
Control Wiring Precautions ..... 17
Output Wiring Precautions ..... 17
Grounding ..... 18
TERMINAL STRIP LOCATIONS ..... 19
POWER WIRING ..... 20
CONTROL WIRING ..... 22
USING THE LOGIC INPUTS (J12) ..... 24
USING THE LOGIC OUTPUTS (J12) ..... 25
USING THE SPEED REFERENCE INPUTS (J13) ..... 26
USING THE ANALOG OUTPUTS (J13) ..... 26
USING THE RELAY OUTPUTS (J1) ..... 27
REMOVAL OF CL1, CL2 JUMPERS ..... 27
CONTROL CIRCUIT DIAGRAMS ..... 28
3-Wire Contro ..... 28
2-Wire Control with Isolation Contactor on Line Side (Coast to Stop) ..... 29
Chapter 3 - Start-Up ..... 33
INTRODUCTION ..... 34
FACTORY SETTINGS ..... 34
CONTROL TYPES ..... 35
Normal ..... 35
NOLD (No Load) ..... 35
MOTOR THERMAL OVERLOAD PROTECTION ..... 36
ADJUSTMENT OF MOTOR OVERLOAD ..... 37
AVAILABLE MOTOR TORQUE ..... 37
Continuous Duty ..... 37
Overtorque Capability and Speed Range ..... 37
Overspeed Operation ( $\mathrm{f} \geq 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ) ..... 38
Driving Torque Production Envelope ..... 38
MOTOR CONSIDERATIONS ..... 39
Chapter 4 - Diagnostics ..... 41
PRECAUTIONS ..... 42
PROCEDURE 1: BUS VOLTAGE MEASUREMENT ..... 42
PROCEDURE 2: INPUT LINE VOLTAGE MEASUREMENT ..... 43
PROCEDURE 3: CHECKING PERIPHERAL EQUIPMENT ..... 43
PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE ..... 44
LEDS ..... 44
FAULT MESSAGES ..... 45
Chapter 5 - Configuration ..... 49
KEYPAD DISPLAY ..... 50
LCD Display ..... 50
ENT Key ..... 50
ESC Key ..... 50
Arrow ( $\mathbf{\Delta} \boldsymbol{\nabla}$ ) Keys ..... 50
Numeric Keys ..... 50
Function Keys ..... 51
Key Cover ..... 51
STOP Key ..... 51
RUN Key ..... 52
Keypad Display Connections ..... 52
MENU OVERVIEW ..... 53
Selecting the Language ..... 53
Drive Configuration ..... 53
Drive Identification ..... 53
Display Mode ..... 53
Main Menu ..... 54
DISPLAY MODE ..... 55
Drive Controller Running ..... 55
Drive Controller in Fault State. ..... 55
ACCESS LEVELS ..... 56
Total Lock ..... 56
Total Unlock ..... 56
MENU SUMMARY: USING THIS CHAPTER ..... 57
$1 \rightarrow$ PARAMETER SETTING MENU ..... 58
Low Speed ..... 58
High Speed ..... 59
Acceleration Time ..... 59
Deceleration Time ..... 59
Damping ..... 59
Profile ..... 60
Motor Overload ..... 60
$\rightarrow / / \mathrm{O}$ MAP ..... 61
$3 \rightarrow$ FAULT HISTORY ..... 62
Troubleshooting ..... 62
$4 \rightarrow$ DISPLAY CONFIGURATION MENU ..... 62
4.1 $\rightarrow$ One Bar Graph ..... 63
$4.2 \rightarrow$ Two Bar Graphs ..... 64
$4.3 \rightarrow$ Scroll ..... 64
$5 \rightarrow$ KEYPAD CONFIGURATION MENU ..... 64
Using Keypad Command Mode ..... 65
$6 \rightarrow$ DRIVE CONFIGURATION MENU ..... 66
$6.1 \rightarrow$ Torque Type ..... 67
$6.2 \rightarrow$ Command Type ..... 67
$6.3 \rightarrow$ Motor Power (ATV56U44 only) ..... 67
2-Wire Command ..... 68
3-Wire Command ..... 68
$7 \rightarrow$ GENERAL CONFIGURATION MENU ..... 69
$7.1 \rightarrow$ Drive Parameters ..... 69
7.11 $\rightarrow$ Motor Parameters ..... 69
Nominal Current ..... 70
Nominal Frequency ..... 70
Nominal Voltage ..... 70
Profile ..... 71
Damping ..... 71
Rotation Normalization ..... 72
Current Limit ..... 72
Reassigning Analog and Logic Inputs ..... 73
$7.12 \rightarrow$ Control Parameters ..... 74
Maximum Frequency ..... 74
Low Speed ..... 75
High Speed ..... 75
Acceleration Time ..... 75
Deceleration Time ..... 75
Skip Frequencies ..... 75
7.13 $\rightarrow$ Control Type ..... 76
Normal ..... 76
NOLD (No Load) ..... 76
7.2 $\rightarrow$ Application Functions ..... 77
Preset Speeds ..... 78
Speed Reference ..... 79
Auto/Manual ..... 80
Controlled Stop ..... 80
By Logic Input ..... 81
By Frequency Threshold ..... 81
By Frequency Threshold / Logic Input ..... 81
Freewheel Stop ..... 82
Fast Stop ..... 82
DC Injection Braking ..... 83
Shutdown ..... 84
Bypass ..... 85
PI Regulator ..... 88
7.3 $\rightarrow$ Output Assignments ..... 96
Logic Output Functions ..... 96
Analog Output Functions ..... 99
7.4 $\rightarrow$ Fault Management ..... 100
Fault Stop ..... 100
Drive Controller Restart Methods ..... 100
Power Loss ..... 101
Automatic Restart ..... 102
Catch On Fly ..... 103
Motor Overload ..... 105
Adjustment of Motor Overload ..... 106
Types of Protection ..... 106
Self-Cooled Motor ..... 106
No Thermal Protection. ..... 106
Input Phase Failure ..... 107
Loss of Follower ..... 107
Fold Back. ..... 108
Fault Reset ..... 108
Dynamic Brake Fault ..... 108
Output Phase Fault ..... 108
$8 \rightarrow$ DIAGNOSTIC MODE ..... 109
Autodiagnostics ..... 109
Logic Input Test ..... 110
Analog Input Test ..... 110
Logic Output Test ..... 110
Analog Output Test. ..... 111
$9 \rightarrow$ DRIVE INITIALIZATION MENU ..... 112
Total Factory Settings ..... 112
Store User Settings. ..... 112
Recall User Settings ..... 113
Chapter 6 - Class 8839 ATV56 Combination Devices ..... 115
INTRODUCTION ..... 117
CONTROLLER PART NUMBERS ..... 118
CONTROLLER NAMEPLATE IDENTIFICATION ..... 118
TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS ..... 119
Specifications ..... 122
Short-Circuit Withstand Ratings ..... 123
DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHTS FOR WALL OR PANEL MOUNTING ..... 124
HANDLING DRIVE CONTROLLERS ..... 128
PRELIMINARY INSPECTION ..... 128
WIRE ROUTING AND INTERCONNECTION ..... 129
Wire Class ..... 129
Noise Class ..... 129
Voltage Class ..... 130
TERMINAL STRIP LOCATIONS ..... 131
POWER WIRING ..... 134
CONTROL WIRING ..... 135
SEQUENCE OF OPERATION AND OPTIONS ..... 138
Terminal Command Mode vs. Keypad Command Mode ..... 138
POWER CIRCUIT W COMBINATION PACKAGE ..... 139
Operator Controls - General Arrangement and Operation ..... 139
Adjustable Speed Operation ..... 139
Freeze/Fire Stats Interlocks ..... 139
MOD B07 Group 2 Pilot Light Cluster ..... 139
MOD C07 Line Isolation Contactor. ..... 139
MOD D07 Omit Hand-Off-Auto Switch \& Manual Speed Potentiometer ..... 140
MOD E07 CSA Certification ..... 141
MOD F07 Smoke Purge Option ..... 141
POWER CIRCUIT Y BYPASS PACKAGE ..... 142
Operator Controls - General Arrangement and Operation ..... 142
Adjustable Speed Operation ..... 142
Bypass Operation ..... 142
Freeze/Fire Stats Interlock ..... 142
MOD A07 Group 1 Pilot Light Cluster ..... 143
MOD B07 Group 2 Pilot Light Cluster ..... 143
MOD C07 Line Isolation Contactor ..... 143
MOD D07 Omit Hand-Off-Auto Switch \& Manual Speed Potentiometer ..... 143
MOD E07 CSA Certification (if used) ..... 145
MOD F07 Smoke Purge Option (if used) ..... 145
POWER CIRCUIT Z REMOTE STARTER BYPASS PACKAGE ..... 146
Operator Controls - General Arrangement and Operation ..... 146
Adjustable Speed Operation ..... 146
Bypass Operation ..... 146
Freeze/Fire Stats Interlocks ..... 146
MOD A07 Group 1 Pilot Light Cluster ..... 147
MOD B07 Group 2 Pilot Light Cluster ..... 147
MOD C07 Line Isolation Contactor. ..... 147
MOD D07 Omit Hand-Off-Auto Switch \& Manual Speed Potentiometer ..... 147
MOD E07 CSA Certification ..... 149
MOD F07 Smoke Purge ..... 149
PROPER DRIVE ISOLATION METHOD ..... 150
CONTROL CIRCUIT DIAGRAMS ..... 151
Appendix A - Parameter Summary ..... 159
Appendix B - Menu Summary ..... 165
Appendix C - Spare Parts ..... 169
Index ..... 173
Chapter 1 - Receiving and Installation
NTRODUCTION ..... 2
Scope .....  2
Revision Level .....  2
HAZARD LABELING ..... 2
TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS .....  3
Specifications ..... 4
DIMENSIONS \& WEIGHTS FOR WALL OR PANEL MOUNTING ..... 6
HANDLING DRIVE CONTROLLERS .....  8
PRELIMINARY INSPECTION .....  8
NSTALLATION PRECAUTIONS ..... 9
MOUNTING IN GENERAL PURPOSE METAL ENCLOSURE ..... 10
Ventilation ..... 10
MOUNTING IN TYPE 12 (IP54) METAL ENCLOSURE ..... 12
Calculating Non-Ventilated Enclosure Size ..... 12
Ventilation ..... 13
Recess Mounting ..... 13

## INTRODUCTION

## Scope

## Revision Level

## HAZARD LABELING

ALTIVAR ${ }^{\text {TM }} 56$ is a family of 1 to $100 \mathrm{hp}, 460 \mathrm{~V}$ and 1 to $50 \mathrm{hp}, 208 / 230 \mathrm{~V}$ adjustable frequency AC drive controllers. The ALTIVAR 56 family consists of 20 devices in 5 outlines. The ALTIVAR 56 drive controllers may function as stand-alone drive controllers or as part of complex drive systems.

The ALTIVAR 56 controller is also available as a combination device drive controller. The Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 is a family of 1 to $100 \mathrm{hp}, 460 \mathrm{~V}$ and 1 to $50 \mathrm{hp}, 208 / 230 \mathrm{~V}$ combination devices consisting of the drive controller, power circuit box with options, and back pan.

The ALTIVAR 56 family also includes optional peripherals. Consult catalog for descriptions.

This manual covers receiving, installation, start-up, and configuration of the $460 \mathrm{~V}, 208 \mathrm{~V}$, and 230 V lines of ALTIVAR 56 and Class 8839 drive controllers. Information on diagnostics is also included.

Several options are available for the ALTIVAR 56 drive controller. Refer to the catalog for a description of these options. A manual or instruction sheet is provided with each option.

This is Revision B. It replaces 50006-519-01A dated November, 1996, and includes information on the Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 combination device.

The ALTIVAR 56 drive controller is shipped with an English safety label applied to the control board. If a Spanish, German, or French label is required, affix it to the main control board above the English label (see Figure 1). Do not obstruct the English label.


Figure 1: Hazard Labeling

## TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Tables 1 and 2 show the power and current ratings for 460 V drive controllers when set for variable torque (Table 1) and variable torque, low noise (Table 2).

Table 1: Variable Torque Drive Controller Ratings, 460 V

## 460 V $\pm 15 \%, 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \pm 5 \%$

Switching Frequency: ATV56U41N4 to D46N4 = 4 kHz, ATV56D54N4 to D79N4 = 2 kHz

|  | Drive Controller Part No. | Motor <br> Power | Input Line Current |  | Output Current | Max. <br> Transient Current (60 s) | Total Dissipated Power |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $\begin{gathered} 460 \mathrm{~V} \\ 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ \mathrm{hp} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 5,000 AIC or } \\ 10,000 \text { AIC }{ }^{[1]} \text { A } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 22,000 \\ \text { AIC } \\ \text { A } \end{gathered}$ |  |  |  |
| 1 | ATV56U41N4 | 1 | 2.7 | 3.2 | 1.8 | 5.3 | 90 |
|  |  | 2 | 4.7 | 5.7 | 3.4 | 5.3 | 110 |
|  |  | 3 | 6.5 | 8 | 4.8 | 5.3 | 130 |
|  | ATV56U54N4 | 5 | 9.8 | 11.9 | 7.6 | 8.4 | 180 |
|  | ATV56U72N4 | 7.5 | 14 | 17 | 11 | 12.1 | 205 |
| 2 | ATV56U90N4 | 10 | 17.7 | 21.4 | 14 | 15.4 | 265 |
|  | ATV56D12N4 | 15 | 25.1 | 30.6 | 21 | 23.1 | 350 |
| 3 | ATV56D16N4 | 20 | 31.8 | 38.3 | 27 | 29.7 | 480 |
|  | ATV56D23N4 | 25 | 38.7 | 47 | 34 | 37.4 | 560 |
| 4 | ATV56D33N4 | 40 | 57.1 | 67.6 | 52 | 57.2 | 800 |
|  | ATV56D46N4 | 50 | 68.6 | 81.2 | 65 | 71.5 | 910 |
| 5 | ATV56D54N4 | 60 | 86.4* | 94.6 | 77 | 84.7 | 960 |
|  | ATV56D64N4 | 75 | 106* | 116 | 96 | 105.6 | 1150 |
|  | ATV56D79N4 | 100 | 138* | 150 | 124 | 136.4 | 1400 |

${ }^{[1]} 10,000$ AIC denoted by asterisk (*).

Table 2: Variable Torque, Low Noise Drive Controller Ratings, 460 V
$460 \mathrm{~V} \pm 15 \%, 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \pm 5 \%$
Switching Frequency: ATV56U41N4 to D46N4 = 10 kHz, ATV56D54N4 to D79N4 = $\mathbf{4} \mathrm{kHz}$

|  | Drive Controller Part No. | Motor Power | Input Line Current |  | Output Current <br> A | Max. <br> Transient Current (60 s) A | Total Dissipated Power <br> W |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $\begin{gathered} 460 \mathrm{~V} \\ 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ \mathrm{hp} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { 5,000 AIC or } \\ \text { 10,000AIC } \\ \text { A } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 22,000 \\ \text { AIC } \\ \text { A } \end{gathered}$ |  |  |  |
| 1 | ATV56U41N4 | 1 | 2.7 | 3.2 | 1.8 | 5.3 | 90 |
|  |  | 2 | 4.7 | 5.7 | 3.4 | 5.3 | 110 |
|  |  | 3 | 6.5 | 8 | 4.8 | 5.3 | 130 |
|  | ATV56U72N4 | 5 | 9.8 | 11.9 | 7.6 | 8.4 | 180 |
| 2 | ATV56U90N4 | 7.5 | 13.9 | 16.7 | 11 | 12.1 | 205 |
|  | ATV56D12N4 | 10 | 17.6 | 21.4 | 14 | 15.4 | 265 |
| 3 | ATV56D16N4 | 15 | 24.8 | 29.9 | 21 | 23.1 | 350 |
|  | ATV56D23N4 | 20 | 31.9 | 38.7 | 27 | 29.7 | 480 |
| 4 | ATV56D33N4 | 30 | 44 | 52.4 | 40 | 44 | 600 |
|  | ATV56D46N4 | 40 | 57.1 | 67.6 | 52 | 57.2 | 800 |
| 5 | ATV56D54N4 | 50 | 68.3 | 80.8 | 65 | 71.5 | 910 |
|  | ATV56D64N4 | 60 | 86.4* | 94.6 | 77 | 84.7 | 960 |
|  | ATV56D79N4 | 75 | 106* | 116 | 96 | 105.6 | 1150 |

[^0]Tables 3 and 4 show the power and current ratings for 230 V drive controllers when set for variable torque (Table 3) and variable torque, low noise (Table 4).

Table 3: Variable Torque Drive Controller Ratings, 208/230 V


Table 4: Variable Torque, Low Noise Drive Controller Ratings, 208/230 V

|  | $208 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$ and $230 \mathrm{~V} \pm 15 \%, 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \pm 5 \%$ <br> cy: ATV56U41M2 to D33M2 = 10 kHz, ATV56D46M2 $=4 \mathrm{kHz}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Drive Controller Part No. | $\begin{gathered} \text { Motor } \\ \text { Power } \\ \text { 208/230 V } \\ 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ \text { hp } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \mid c \\ \text { Inpu } \\ 208 \mathrm{~V} \\ 8,800 \mathrm{AIC} \\ \text { A } \end{array}$ |  | nt <br> 22,000 <br> AIC <br> A | Output Current <br> A | Max. Transient Current (60 s) <br> A | Total Dissipated Power <br> W |
| 1 | ATV56U41M2 | $\begin{aligned} & 1 \\ & 2 \\ & 3 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 5.8 \\ 10.4 \\ 14.3 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline 5.4 \\ 8.8 \\ 12.0 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 6.4 \\ 10.4 \\ 14.3 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 4.0 \\ 7.5 \\ 10.6 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 11.7 \\ & 11.7 \\ & 11.7 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 125 \\ & 150 \\ & 181 \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |
| 2 | ATV56U72M2 | 5 | 21.8 | 18.3 | 21.8 | 16.7 | 18.4 | 252 |
|  | ATV56U90M2 | 7.5 | 30.6 | 25.8 | 30.7 | 24.2 | 26.6 | 375 |
|  | ATV56D12M2 | 10 | 38.9 | 32.8 | 39.0 | 31 | 34 | 459 |
|  | ATV56D16M2 | 15 | 55.1 | 46.5 | 55.2 | 47 | 51 | 619 |
| 4 | ATV56D23M2 | 20 | 70.3 | 59.6 | 70.3 | 60 | 66 | 785 |
| 4 | ATV56D33M2 | 30 | 97.2 | 80.8 | 97.2 | 88 | 97 | 1127 |
| 5 | ATV56D46M2 | 40 | 124.2 | 102.0 | 125.4 | 115 | 126 | 1332 |

Specifications
Table 5 contains specifications for 460 V and 208/230 V drive controllers.

Table 5: Specifications

| Input voltage | $460 \mathrm{~V} \pm 15 \%$ or $208 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$ and $230 \mathrm{~V} \pm 15 \%$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Displacement power factor | Approximately 0.96 |
| Input frequency | 47.5 to 63 Hz |
| Output voltage | Maximum voltage equal to input line voltage |

Table 5: Specifications (Continued)

| Frequency resolution | Drive controller: <br> Input Al1: (High Speed/1,024) Hz ${ }^{[1]}$ <br> Input AI2: (High Speed/512) Hz [1] <br> Keypad display: 0.1 Hz increments <br> Processor: 0.015 Hz increments <br> With Option Board: <br> Option board analog inputs: (High Speed/4096) Hz [1] |
| :---: | :---: |
| Frequency accuracy | $\pm(0.0075$ Hz + 0.00005 times High Speed) |
| Temperature drift [2] | Drive controller: <br> Analog inputs: $3 \times 10^{-4}$ times High Speed $/{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ typical <br> Keypad display: $7 \times 10^{-7}$ times High Speed $/{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ maximum <br> With option board: <br> Option board analog inputs: $2.5 \times 10^{-5}$ times High Speed/ ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ typical |
| Frequency range | ATV56U41N4 to D79N4: 0.1 to 72 Hz ATV56U41M2 to D46M2: 0.1 to 72 Hz |
| Torque/overtorque | See page 37. |
| Speed reference | Al1: 0-10 V <br> AI2: $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> $0-5 \mathrm{~V}$ with switch on control board 0-20 mA, x-20 mA, 20-4 mA with keypad display |
| Speed regulation | V/f: determined by motor slip, typically 3\% SLFV (sensorless flux vector): 1\% |
| Efficiency | Typically greater than 96\% |
| Reference sample time | 10 ms |
| Ramps | Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds |
| Braking to standstill | By DC injection: <br> Automatic for 0.5 s if frequency drops below 1 Hz Manual by external signal |
| Drive controller protection | Against short circuits: <br> - between output phases <br> - between output phases and ground <br> - on the outputs of internal supplies <br> - on the logic and analog outputs Against input line supply under/overvoltage Against overheating: by thermal sensor |
| Motor protection | Incorporated electronic thermal protection (see page 11 and page 36) |
| Keypad display | - Self-diagnostics with full fault messages in seven languages <br> - Also refer to Chapter 5 |
| Temperature | Operation: +32 to $+104^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\left(0\right.$ to $\left.+40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$ Storage: -13 to $+158{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\left(-25\right.$ to $\left.+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$ |
| Humidity | 95\% maximum without condensation or dripping water |
| Altitude | $\leq 3,300 \mathrm{ft}(1,000 \mathrm{~m})$; above this derate by $1.2 \%$ for every $300 \mathrm{ft}(100 \mathrm{~m})$, max. 6,600 ft (2,000 m) |
| Enclosure | NEMA Type 1 (IP30) |
| Pollution Degree | Pollution Degree 3 per NEMA ICS-1 and IEC 664-1 |
| Resistance to vibration | Conforming to IEC 68-2-6: <br> - ATV56U41N4 to D46N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D33M2: 1 mm peak to peak from 5 to 22.3 Hz and 2 g peak from 22.3 to 150 Hz <br> - ATV56D54N4 to D79N4 and ATV56D46M2: 0.15 mm peak to peak from 10 to 58 Hz and 1 g peak from 58 to 150 Hz |
| Resistance to shock | Conforming to IEC 68-2-27: 15 g peak for 11 ms |
| Codes and standards | - UL Listed per UL 508C under category NMMS as incorporating electronic overload protection <br> - CSA certified <br> - Conforms to applicable NEMA ICS, NFPA, IEC, \& ISO 9001 standards |

[^1]DIMENSIONS \& WEIGHTS FOR WALL
OR PANEL MOUNTING

## CONDUIT ENTRIES - BOTTOM VIEW



Outline 1


Outline 2

in (mm)

MOUNTING DIMENSIONS

| \% | Drive Controller ATV56•••N4 | Drive Controller ATV56•••M2 | H1 |  | H2 |  | W1 |  | W2 |  | $\varnothing$ |  | Weight |  | Door Swing Clearance |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | in | mm | in | mm | in | mm | in | mm | in | mm | lb | kg | in | mm |
| 1 | U41- U72 | U41 | 11.6 | 295 | 10.9 | 280 | 7.8 | 200 | 6.9 | 175 | 0.22 | 5.5 | 10.4 | 4.7 | 7.8 | 200 |
| 2 | U90, D12 | U72, U90 | 12.8 | 325 | 12.2 | 310 | 9.2 | 234 | 8.2 | 209 | 0.22 | 5.5 | 16.1 | 7.3 | 9.2 | 234 |
| 3 | D16, D23 | D12, D16 | 16.3 | 415 | 15.7 | 400 | 9.2 | 234 | 8.2 | 209 | 0.22 | 5.5 | 30.9 | 14 | 9.2 | 234 |

${ }^{[1]}$ Door hinges on left-hand side of drive controller.
Figure 2: Mounting Information for ATV56U41N4 to D23N4 \& ATV56U41M2 to D16M2
NOTE: When metallic conduit is used with drive controllers of outlines 1-3, install a metal conduit entry plate (kit VY1A66201 - separately ordered). Kit mounts in place of the existing plastic plate and has a conduit hole pattern identical to those shown for outlines 1 through 3.

## CONDUIT ENTRIES - BOTTOM VIEW



Outline 4
MOUNTING



Dimensions in (mm)

Outline 5

MOUNTING DIMENSIONS

|  | Drive Controller ATV56•••N4 | Drive Controller ATV56•••M2 | H1 |  | H2 |  | W1 |  | W2 |  | $\varnothing$ |  | J |  | Weight |  | Door Swing Clearance [1] |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | in | mm | in | mm | in | mm | in | mm | in | mm | in | mm | lb | kg | in | mm |
| 4 | D33, D46 | D23, D33 | 23.6 | 600 | 22.8 | 580 | 9.5 | 240 | 8.1 | 205 | 0.28 | 7 | 3.19 | 81 | 59.5 | 27 | 9.5 | 240 |
| 5 | D54 - D79 | D46 | 25.6 | 650 | 24.4 | 620 | 13.8 | 350 | 11.8 | 300 | 0.35 | 9 | 3.39 | 86 | $\begin{aligned} & 88.2 \\ & 90.4 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 40 \\ & 41 \end{aligned}$ | 13.8 | 350 |

Figure 3: Mounting Information for ATV56D33N4 to D79N4 \& ATV56D33M2 to D46M2

## HANDLING DRIVE CONTROLLERS

## Prior to installation

1. Open the drive controller door or remove access covers.
2. Visually verify that all internal mounting hardware and terminal connection hardware is properly seated, securely fastened and undamaged.
3. Visually verify that the control board is properly seated, securely fastened and undamaged. Verify that internal wiring connections are tight. Inspect all connections for damage
4. Close and secure the drive controller door or replace access covers.

## A CAUTION

## EQUIPMENT DAMAGE HAZARD

Do not operate or install any drive controller that appears damaged.
Failure to follow this instruction can result in injury or equipment damage.

## INSTALLATION

 PRECAUTIONSTo avoid equipment damage, follow these precautions when installing the drive controller:

- Electrical current through drive controller will result in heat losses that must be dissipated into the ambient air immediately surrounding the drive controller. To prevent thermal fault or equipment damage, provide sufficient enclosure cooling and/or ventilation to limit the ambient temperature around drive controller to a maximum of $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. For power dissipation, refer to Tables 1 through 4 on pages 3 - 4 . Minimum clearances required around the drive controller for unobstructed air flow are shown in Figure 5. For proper thermal dissipation, the minimum enclosure size must not be based on clearances alone. Refer to section "MOUNTING IN GENERAL PURPOSE METAL ENCLOSURE" on page 10 for additional information.

Dimensions: in (mm)


Outlines 1-3
(ATV56U41N4 to D23N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D16M2)


Outlines 4-5
(ATV56D33N4 to D79N4 and ATV56D23M2 to D46M2)

Figure 5: Clearances for Drive Controllers

- Mount drive controller vertically
- Do not locate drive controller near heat radiating elements.
- When installation surface is uneven, put a spacer behind the drive controller mounting pads to eliminate gaps. The drive controller exterior may be damaged if fastened to an uneven surface.
- Drive controllers are Type 1 enclosed devices and must be installed in a suitable environment. The environment around drive controller must not exceed Pollution Degree 3 requirements as defined in NEMA ICS 1 or IEC 664.
- Verify that the voltage and frequency characteristics of the input line match the drive controller nameplate rating.
- Installation of a disconnect switch between the input line and drive controller is recommended. Follow national and local codes.
- Overcurrent protection is required. Install line power fuses (F1-F3) recommended in Table 11 on page 30 and Table 13 on page 31.
- Turn off all power before installing the drive controller. Place a "DO NOT TURN ON" label on the drive controller disconnect. Before proceeding with installation, lock the disconnect in the open position.
- The ATV56U41N4 to ATV56D79N4 and ATV56U41M2 to ATV56D46M2 drive controllers may be mounted inside another enclosure to increase the degree of protection or size of the enclosure. See "MOUNTING IN GENERAL PURPOSE METAL ENCLOSURE" on page 10 and "MOUNTING IN TYPE 12 (IP54) METAL ENCLOSURE" on page 12.
- To improve ventilation, the front cover may be removed when mounting the drive controller in an enclosure. For ATV56U41N4 to D23N4 and ATV56U41M2 to ATV56D16M2 drive controllers, the front cover is removed by first opening the cover, then separating the retaining clips on the cover from the side panel. For ATV56D33N4 to D79N4 and ATV56D23M2 to ATV56D46M2 drive controllers, the front cover is removed by first opening the cover, then lifting it vertically.
- With the front cover removed, the ATV56U41N4 to D79N4 and ATV56U41M2 to ATV56D46M2 drive controllers have an IP20 enclosure rating.
- The solid state switches of the drive controller power circuit do not provide complete isolation from the line. Leakage currents and voltages may be present at the $\mathrm{U} / \mathrm{T} 1, \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{T} 2$, and $\mathrm{W} / \mathrm{T} 3$ terminals of the drive controller whenever power is present.


## MOUNTING IN GENERAL PURPOSE METAL ENCLOSURE

## Ventilation

The ALTIVAR 56 drive controller is a Type 1/IP30 enclosed product. However, certain application considerations may require that the drive controller be installed inside a larger enclosure. If so, observe the following precautions:

Forced air cooling is provided on all drive controllers. A fan is located in the bottom of the drive controller (see Figure 6 on page 11) and is protected by a perforated cover. The fan draws in ambient air from underneath or from the front of the enclosure over the heat sink fins, and expels it vertically from the top of the enclosure. When mounting the drive controller, be sure the air inlets and outlets are not obstructed.

- Follow the installation precautions on pages 9 and 10.
- Observe minimum clearance distances as indicated in Figure 5 on page 9.
- If the enclosure does not provide sufficient free air flow, an enclosure ventilation fan is required to exhaust the heat to the enclosure outside ambient. The enclosure fan should have a greater fan flow rate than the drive controller fan flow rate listed in Table 6 on page 11.
- If there is a possibility of condensation, keep the control supply switched on during periods when the motor is not running or install thermostatically controlled strip heaters.

Side view shown.


ATV56U41N4 to D23N4 and U41M2 to D16M2


ATV56D33N4 to D79N4 and D23M2 to D46M2

Figure 6: Ventilation for ATV56U41N4 to D79N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D46M2

Table 6: Flow Rates for ALTIVAR 56 Drive Controller Fans

| Drive Controller | Fan Flow Rate ${ }^{[1]}$ |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
|  | CFM | $\mathbf{d m}^{3} / \mathbf{s}$ |
| ATV56U41N4, ATV56U54N4 | 10 | 5 |
| ATV56U72N4, ATV56U41M2 | 20 | 10 |
| ATV56U90N4, ATV56D12N4, ATV56U72M2, ATV56U90M2 | 44 | 22 |
| ATV56D16N4, ATV56D23N4, ATV56D12M2, ATV56D16M2 | 94 | 47 |
| ATV56D33N4, ATV56D46N4, ATV56D54N4, ATV56D64N4, <br> ATV56D79N4, ATV56D23M2, ATV56D33M2, ATV56D46M2 | 200 | 100 |
| $[1]$ Free air flow rates. |  |  |

For ATV56D16N4 to D79N4 and ATV56D12M2 to D46M2 drive controllers, the yellow pre-alarm LED flashes when the drive controller approaches the thermal limit. When the drive controller is running at rated load, this pre-alarm is issued at least one minute before the thermal limit is reached.

Thermal protection of all drive controllers is ensured by a thermal sensor attached to the heat sink. When the sensor opens:

- Drive controller trips, the fault LED is illuminated and a fault message appears on the keypad display.
- Ventilation system continues operating if control supply is maintained, enabling the drive controller to be rapidly cooled down.


# MOUNTING IN TYPE 12 (IP54) METAL ENCLOSURE 

## Calculating Non-Ventilated Enclosure Size

The ALTIVAR 56 drive controller is a Type 1/IP30 enclosed product, however certain applications may require Type 12 or IP54 protection. The following kits are available:

- Recess mounting kits for mounting drive controller with the heat sink outside the enclosure. There are two types available (see page 13).

Below is the equation for calculating Rth $\left({ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C} / \mathrm{W}\right)$, the maximum allowable thermal resistance of the enclosure:

$$
\text { Rth }=\frac{\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{i}}-\mathrm{T}_{0}}{\mathrm{P}} \quad \begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{i}}=\text { Max. internal ambient temp. }\left({ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right) \text { around drive controller } \\
& \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{o}}=\text { Max. external ambient temp. }\left({ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right) \text { around enclosure } \\
& \mathrm{P}=\text { Total power dissipated in enclosure }(\mathrm{W})
\end{aligned}
$$

For the power dissipated by the drive controllers at rated load, see Tables 1 through 4 on pages 3-4.

Useful heat exchange surface area, $\mathrm{S}\left(\mathrm{in}^{2}\right)$, of a wall-mounted enclosure generally consists of the sides, top and front. The minimum surface area required for a drive controller enclosure is calculated as follows:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\mathrm{S}=\frac{\mathrm{K}}{\mathrm{Rth}} & \mathrm{Rth}=\text { Thermal resistance of the enclosure (calculated previously) } \\
\mathrm{K}=300 \text { for painted metal }
\end{array}
$$

The following points should be considered when sizing the enclosure:

- Use only metallic enclosures, since they have good thermal conduction.
- This procedure does not consider radiant or convected heat load from external sources. Do not install enclosures where external heat sources (such as direct sunlight) can add to enclosure heat load.
- If additional devices are present inside the enclosure, the heat load of the devices must be considered in the calculation.
- The actual useful area for convection cooling of the enclosure will vary depending upon the method of mounting. The method of mounting must allow for free air movement over all surfaces considered for convection cooling.
Below is a sample calculation of the enclosure size for an ATV56U72N4 (5 hp) drive controller mounted in a Type 12 enclosure.
- Maximum external temperature: $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{O}}=25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
- Power dissipated inside enclosure: $\mathrm{P}=165 \mathrm{~W}$
- Maximum internal temperature: $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{i}}=40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
- Area resistivity for painted metal: $K=300$
- Calculate maximum allowable thermal resistance, Rth:

$$
\text { Rth }=\frac{40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}}{165 \mathrm{~W}}=0.091^{\circ} \mathrm{C} / \mathrm{W}
$$

- Calculate minimum useful heat exchange surface area, S :

$$
S=\frac{300}{0.091}=3300 \mathrm{in}^{2}
$$

Useful heat exchange surface area $(\mathrm{S})$ of the proposed wall-mounted enclosure:

- Height: 40 in (1016 mm)
- Width: 40 in ( 1016 mm )
- Depth: 20 in ( 508 mm )



## Ventilation

Recess Mounting

When the drive controller is mounted inside a Type 12 or IP54 enclosure, observe the following ventilation precautions:

- Observe minimum clearance distances shown in Figure 5 on page 9.
- Follow the installation precautions on pages 9 and 10.
- A stirring fan may be necessary to circulate the air inside the enclosure and prevent hot spots in the drive controller and to distribute the heat uniformly to surfaces used for convection cooling.
- If there is a possibility of condensation, keep the control supply switched on during periods when the motor is not running or install thermostatically controlled strip heaters.

To reduce power dissipated in an enclosure, ATV56U41N4 to D23N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D16M2 drive controllers may be recess mounted in a wall of the enclosure, with the heat sink on the outside. This requires a cutout in the enclosure and a recess mounting kit for recess mounting. When this kit is used, the majority of the drive controller heat load is dissipated outside the enclosure.

The power dissipated in the enclosure $\left(\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}}\right)$ must be dissipated by the available surface area of the enclosure. The heat sink assembly, which is mounted outside the enclosure, is rated for Type 12/IP54 protection when used with this kit.

There are two types of recess mounting kits, the Gasket Kit, which contains only the gasket necessary for recess mounting, and the Mounting Adaptor Plate Kit which provides mounting plates along with gaskets to allow assembling the drive controller to the plates before bolting the assembly into the enclosure. This aids in installation and maintenance of the drive controller.

Table 7: Recess Mounting Kits

| Gasket Kit | Mounting Adaptor Plate Kit | Drive Controller | $\mathrm{P}_{\mathrm{i}}{ }^{[1]}(\mathrm{W})$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| VW3-A66801T | VW3-A66806 | ATV56U41N4 ATV56U54N4 ATV56U72N4 ATV56U41M2 | 70 |
| VW3-A66802T | VW3-A66807 | ATV56U90N4 ATV56D12N4 ATV56U72M2 ATV56U90M2 | 75 |
| VW3-A66803T | VW3-A66808 | ATV56D16N4 ATV56D23N4 ATV56D12M2 ATV56D16M2 | $\begin{aligned} & 110 \\ & 130 \\ & 110 \\ & 130 \end{aligned}$ |

[^2]Chapter 2 - Wiring
WIRING ..... 16
General Wiring Practices ..... 16
Branch Circuit Connections ..... 16
Control Wiring Precautions ..... 17
Output Wiring Precautions ..... 17
Grounding ..... 18
TERMINAL STRIP LOCATIONS ..... 19
POWER WIRING ..... 20
CONTROL WIRING ..... 22
USING THE LOGIC INPUTS (J12) ..... 24
USING THE LOGIC OUTPUTS (J12) ..... 25
USING THE SPEED REFERENCE INPUTS (J13) ..... 26
USING THE ANALOG OUTPUTS (J13) ..... 26
USING THE RELAY OUTPUTS (J1) ..... 27
REMOVAL OF CL1, CL2 JUMPERS ..... 27
CONTROL CIRCUIT DIAGRAMS ..... 28
3-Wire Control ..... 28
2-Wire Control with Isolation Contactor on Line Side (Coast to Stop) ..... 29

## WIRING

 General Wiring Practices
## Branch Circuit Connections

Good wiring practice requires the separation of control circuit wiring from all power (line and load) wiring. Power wiring to the motor must have the maximum possible separation from all other power wiring, whether from the same drive or other drives; do not run in the same conduit. This separation reduces the possibility of coupling electrical noise between circuits
When wiring ALTIVAR ${ }^{\mathrm{TM}} 56$ drive controllers, follow the wiring practices required by national and local electrical codes in addition to the following:

- When metallic conduit is used with ATV56U41N4 to D23N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D16M2 drive controllers, a metal conduit entry plate, kit VY1A66201, must be used. It mounts in place of the existing plastic plate and is held in place with two screws. A bond wire is included, which must be connected to ground (GND) on the J2 terminal strip.
- Use metallic conduit for all drive controller wiring. Do not run control and power wiring in the same conduit.
- Metallic conduits carrying power wiring or low-level control wiring must be separated by at least 3 in ( 8 cm ).
- Non-metallic conduits or cable trays used to carry power wiring must be separated from metallic conduit carrying low-level control wiring by at least 12 in ( 30.5 cm ).
- Whenever power and control wiring cross, the metallic conduits and nonmetallic conduits or trays must cross at right angles.
- In some installations, conducted emissions to the line from the drive controller must be attenuated to prevent interference with telecommunication, radio and sensitive electronic equipment. In these instances, attenuating filters may be required. Consult catalog for selection and application of these filters.

All branch circuit components and equipment (such as transformers, feeder cables, disconnect devices and protective devices) must be rated for the maximum input current of the ALTIVAR 56 drive controller, not the motor full load current. The drive controller input current is stamped on the nameplate. Since maximum input current depends on the impedance of the power system, several nameplate values are listed. The input current values listed are based on available fault current at the drive input terminals. Select the input current corresponding to the available fault current capability. If current limiting fuses or circuit breakers are used to reduce the available fault current, use the maximum input current listed. On the ATV56U41N4 to D79N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D46M2 drive controllers, the nameplate is located in the bottom right corner of the right side of the drive controller.

## A WARNING

## OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES MUST BE PROPERLY COORDINATED

- To achieve published fault withstand current ratings, install the specified fuses listed on drive controller nameplate and in Table 11 on page 30.
- Do not connect drive controller to power feeder whose short circuit capacity exceeds drive controller withstand fault rating listed on drive controller nameplate.
Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

All ALTIVAR 56 drive controllers require fuse protection. ATV56U41N4 to D79N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D46M2 drive controllers require user-supplied external fuses as indicated on the nameplate and in Table 11 on page 30 and Table 13 on page 31.

## Control Wiring Precautions

All control inputs and outputs of the drive controller are isolated from the input lines, however certain control wiring precautions must be followed:

- Control wiring conductor runs must be kept short and direct. Follow the conduit and circuit separation requirements listed in "WIRING" on page 16.
- Control contacts used with the drive controller inputs must be rated for operation at open circuit voltages of 24 VDC and closed circuit currents of 10 mADC .
- Twisted cable with a pitch of 1 to 2 inches is required for analog inputs and outputs. Use of a cable shield is recommended. The shield must be terminated to ground at one end only. It is recommended that the shield be terminated at the drive controller. Shield connection terminals are provided on the ALTIVAR 56 drive controller for this purpose.
- The coils of all relays and solenoids connected to the output contacts of the drive controller must be equipped with appropriate transient suppressors.
- For proper control wiring, conductors must be routed to avoid contact with other voltage potentials in the drive controller. Wire insulation must have the appropriate voltage rating for the voltage present.

| A WARNING |
| :--- |
| DRIVE CONTROLLER DAMAGE |
| Drive controller will be damaged if input line voltage is applied to output terminals |
| (U/T1, V/T2, W/T3). Check power connections before energizing drive controller. |
| Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or |
| equipment damage. |

The drive controller is sensitive to the amount of capacitance (either phase-tophase or phase-to-ground) present on the output power conductors. If excessive capacitance is present, the drive controller may trip. Follow the guidelines below when selecting output cable:

- Cable type: the cable selected must have a low capacitance phase-to-phase and to ground. Do not use mineral impregnated cable because it has a very high capacitance. Immersion of cables in water increases capacitance.
- Cable length: the longer the cable, the greater the capacitance. Cable lengths greater than $100 \mathrm{ft}(30.5 \mathrm{~m})$ may cause problems.
- Proximity to output cables from other drive controllers: because of the high frequency switching and increased capacitance, the drive may fault under some conditions.
- Do not use lightning arrestors or power factor correction capacitors on output of drive controller.

For installation where cable capacitances may be a problem, an inductor can be installed between the drive controller and the motor. See catalog or consult factory for additional information.

[^3]
## Grounding

For safe, dependable operation, drive controllers must be grounded according to all national and local codes. To ground the drive controller:

- Connect a copper wire from the grounding terminal to the power system ground conductor. Wire size is determined by the drive controller size and by national and local codes.
- Verify that resistance to ground is one ohm or less. Improper grounding causes intermittent and unreliable operation.


## A DANGER

HAZARDOUS VOLTAGE—INADEQUATE GROUNDING

- Ground equipment using screw provided. Drive controller must be properly grounded before applying power.
- Do not use metallic conduits or shields as a ground conductor.

Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.
Multiple drive controllers must be grounded as shown in Figure 7. Do not loop or series the ground cables.


Figure 7: Grounding Multiple Drive Controllers

- When using the metal conduit entry plate (kit VY1A66201) with ATV56U41N4 to D23N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D16M2 drive controllers, the bond wire must be connected to ground (GND) as shown in Figure 9 on page 22.


## TERMINAL STRIP

## LOCATIONS



Outlines 1 \& 2
ATV66U41N4 to D12N4 and ATV66U41M2 to U90M2



Outline 3
ATV66D16N4 to D23N4 and ATV66D12M2 to D16M2


Outline 4
ATV66D33N4 to D46N4 and ATV66D23M2 to D33M2

Figure 8: Terminal Strip Locations: ATV56U41N4 to D79N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D46M2

Table 8: Power Terminal Strip Characteristics ${ }^{[1]}$

| Connector | Terminal ${ }^{[2]}$ | Function | Characteristics |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| J2 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { GND } \\ & \text { L1 } \\ & \text { L2 } \\ & \text { L3 } \end{aligned}$ | 3-phase power supply | 460 VAC $\pm 15 \%$ (ATV56•••N4 units) <br> $208 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \% / 230 \mathrm{~V} \pm 15 \%$ (ATV56•••M2 units) <br> 47 to 63 Hz |
|  | $+$ | Filtered DC voltage | 620 to 850 VDC (ATV56•••N4 units) 275 to 425 VDC (ATV56 $\cdots \cdot$ M2 units) |
|  | U/T1 <br> V/T2 <br> W/T3 <br> GND | Output connections to motor | 0 to 460 VAC <br> 0 to 208 VAC / 0 to 230 VAC |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { CL1 }{ }^{[3]} \\ & \text { CL2 } \end{aligned}$ | Single-phase control supply | 460 VAC $\pm 15 \%$ (ATV56•••N4 units) <br> $208 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \% / 230 \mathrm{~V} \pm 15 \%$ (ATV56•••M2 units) <br> 47 to 63 Hz |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { PA } \\ & \text { PB } \end{aligned}$ | Reserved | Reserved. Do not wire to PA, PB terminals. |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { CL21 } \\ & \text { CL22 } \end{aligned}$ | Tap for CL1 and CL2 | 460 VAC $\pm 15 \%$ (ATV56•••N4 units) <br> $208 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \% / 230 \mathrm{~V} \pm 15 \%$ (ATV56•••M2 units) <br> 47 to 63 Hz <br> ATV56D16N4 to D79N4 drive controllers only |

${ }^{[1]}$ For power terminal strip locations, refer to Figure 9 on page 22.
${ }^{[2]}$ See circuit diagrams on page 28 and 29.
${ }^{[3]}$ The CL1 and CL2 terminals are connected with jumpers to L1 and L2 terminals. When using a line contactor, the jumpers must be removed and CL1 and CL2 supplied separately to maintain control power. See circuit diagrams on page 28 and page 29. CL1 and CL2 must be connected to the same feeder conductors that supply L1, L2 and L3 of the drive controller.

## Table 9: Power Terminal Wire Range

NOTE: All wire entries in AWG or Thousand Circular Mills (MCM) represent the maximum allowable conductor size for the referenced field wiring terminal. All wire entries in square $\mathrm{mm}\left(\mathrm{mm}^{2}\right)$ represent the recommended size of conductor based on IEC 364 conductor dimensioning criteria. Do not use the IEC 364 conductor selections for installations requiring dimensioning per NFPA 70 or CSA C22.

[1] $60 / 75^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ copper.
[2] $75^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ copper.
3] Reserved. Do not wire to PA, PB terminals

## CONTROL WIRING

## NOTE:

The logic inputs and outputs and analog inputs and outputs are all referenced to Common (COM on J12 and J13). This Common is isolated from the input line and from ground (S on J13).
RMS voltage rating of the isolation barrier between Common and ground is 250 V. If Common is elevated with respect to earth by external user connections, then all devices connected to Common must be rated for the applied voltage.
J1 is located on the power board.


Figure 9: Terminal Strip Connections for Control Board

Table 10: Control Terminal Strip Characteristics

${ }^{[1]}$ See circuit diagrams on page 28 and 29.
[2] Max. wire size for all terminals: 14 AWG ( $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ ). Tightening torque: $3.5 \mathrm{lb}-\mathrm{in}(0.4 \mathrm{n} \bullet \mathrm{m})$.
[3] Relay coil deenergizes on fault.
${ }^{[4]}$ Contact state with drive controller deenergized.
[5] Total current of +24 V internal supply is 210 mA . Available current of the two logic outputs can be calculated as follows: each logic input requires 10 mA , each analog output requires 20 mA and the typical quiescent current of LOP is 15 mA . For example, in an application where three logic inputs and one analog output are used, the total available current is $210 \mathrm{~mA}-(3 \times 10 \mathrm{~mA})-(1 \times 20 \mathrm{~mA})-15 \mathrm{~mA}=145 \mathrm{~mA}$ to drive the logic output loads. If more current is required, an external supply must be used
${ }^{[6]}$ 0-20 mA, x-20 mA, 20-4 mA programmable with keypad display. 0-5 $\mathrm{V}(\mathrm{Z}=30 \mathrm{k} \Omega)$ selectable with switch on control board.

USING THE LOGIC INPUTS (J 12)

The logic inputs may be operated from either the internal supply or an external supply. Figure 10 shows the connections for operating the logic inputs from the internal power supply.


Figure 10: Operating the Logic Inputs from Internal Power Supply

Figure 11 shows the connections for operating the logic inputs from an external power supply.


Figure 11: Operating the Logic Inputs from External Power Supply

The logic inputs may be assigned to other functions than those set at the factory. Factory settings are listed in Table 16 on page 34. For information on other functions, refer to Chapter 5.

## USING THE LOGIC OUTPUTS (J 12)

The logic outputs can be operated from either the internal supply or an external supply. An external supply is required if the logic outputs drive a load at a voltage other than 24 V or if the current required is greater than the available current as calculated in Note 5 in Table 10 on page 23.

NOTE: If the internal supply is used, LOP must be connected to +24 .


Figure 12: Operating the Logic Outputs from Internal Power Supply

Figure 13 shows the connection of an external supply for operating the logic outputs.


Figure 13: Operating the Logic Outputs from External Power Supply

## USING THE SPEED REFERENCE INPUTS (J 13)

The ALTIVAR 56 drive controller has two analog inputs for the speed reference, AI1 and AI2. AI1 is a $0-10 \mathrm{~V}$ voltage input. A speed potentiometer between $2.2 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ and $2.5 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ can be connected at $\mathrm{COM}, \mathrm{AI} 1$ and +10 V as shown in Figure 14. AI2 is factory set as a $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ current input. It can be programmed to 0-20 mA, x-20 mA or 20-4 mA with the keypad display. It can also be set for $0-5 \mathrm{~V}$ with a switch on the control board.

- The speed reference controls the frequency of applied power to the motor. The actual shaft speed remains dependent on the acceleration and deceleration ramps, the torque capabilities of the motor/drive controller combination, the control type selected (see page 35), and the number of poles on the motor.
- The speed range is limited by Low Speed and High Speed settings. Factory settings are zero and nominal or base frequency.
- The speed reference inputs share the same common and are isolated from the input line and from ground.
- The +10 V internal supply (terminals $+10 / \mathrm{COM}$ ) has a 10 mA supply capability and is protected against short circuits.
- If signals are present on both inputs, the values are summed for the speed reference. With the keypad display, they can be configured to be independent. For more information on configuration of the analog inputs, refer to Chapter 5.

Figure 14 shows how the speed reference inputs may be connected. The speed reference inputs are isolated from the input line.


Figure 14: Using Speed Reference Inputs

The ALTIVAR 56 drive controller has two 0-20 mA analog outputs, AO1 and AO2. They are both $0-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ current inputs. AO1 is factory set as proportional to motor frequency, with 20 mA corresponding to High Speed. AO2 is factory set as proportional to motor current, with 20 mA corresponding to twice the rated output current of the drive controller (see Tables 1 to 4 on pages 3-4).

- Maximum driving voltage is +12 V with an internal impedance of $100 \Omega$
- The analog outputs can be assigned to other functions than those set at the factory. For information on other functions, refer to Chapter 5.


Figure 15: Analog Outputs

## USING THE RELAY OUTPUTS ( ${ }^{1}$ )

## REMOVAL OF CL1, CL2 J UMPERS

The ALTIVAR 56 drive controller has two voltage-free Form C relay output contacts (see Figure 16). The contacts have the following characteristics:

- Minimum voltage: +24 VDC; minimum current: 10 mA
- Maximum voltage: +30 VDC; maximum current: 2 A
- 120 VAC: maximum current 2 A
- 220 VAC: maximum current 1 A
- R1 is the drive controller fault relay. It is not programmable.


Figure 16: Relay Outputs
Contact state is shown with drive controller deenergized. Relay contact outputs can be assigned to other functions than those set at the factory. Factory settings are listed in Table 16 on page 34. For information on other functions, refer to Chapter 5.

Maximum recommended fuse type and rating is Bussmann FNQ-2 or equivalent.

Jumpers CL1 and CL2 are factory installed. If separate control power is required, these jumpers must be removed. To remove jumpers, use the following procedure:

ATV56U41N4 to D12N4 and ATV56U41M2 to U90M2 drive controllers: Loosen the CL1 and CL2 screws and the L1 and L2 screws. Remove captive jumper wire assembly

ATV56D16N4 to D79N4 and ATV56D12M2 to D46M2 drive controllers:

1. Loosen the front screws only (see Figure 17).


Figure 17: CL1, CL2 Jumper Removal
2. Using a pair of needle nose pliers, grasp the jumpers and pull straight out. The sleeve on the bottom terminal should remain.
3. Connect separate control power to the top terminals. DO NOT make connections to the bottom terminals which contain the sleeves. Leave the bottom terminals open circuited.
4. Tighten the front screws to secure the connections

CONTROL CIRCUIT DIAGRAMS

3-Wire Control

This section contains wiring diagrams for 2- and 3-wire control circuits. Operation of 2- and 3-wire control is explained in Chapter 5.


Figure 18: Recommended 3-Wire Control Circuit Diagram
Figure 18 is the recommended 3-wire control circuit diagram. It shows how to connect a branch circuit disconnect device and protective fusing to the drive controller. Additional sequencing logic may be required. Refer to Tables 11 to 15 on pages 30-32 for additional equipment required. The drive controller is factory set for 2-wire control. To set for 3-wire control, refer to Chapter 5.


Figure 19: 2-Wire Control Circuit Diagram
Figure 19 is a 2-wire control circuit diagram. It shows how to connect a branch circuit disconnect device and protective fusing to the drive controller. Additional sequencing logic may be required. See Tables 11 to 15 on pages $30-32$ for additional equipment required.

## 2-Wire Control with Isolation Contactor on Line Side (Coast to Stop)



Figure 20: 2-Wire Control Circuit Diagram with Isolation Contactor

Figure 20 is a 2-wire control circuit diagram with an isolation contactor on the line side. It shows how to connect a branch circuit disconnect device and protective fusing to the drive controller. Additional sequencing logic may be required. Refer to Tables 11 to 15 on pages 30-32 for additional equipment required.

The maximum number of operations of the KM1 contactor should not exceed one per minute for the ATV56U41N4 to ATV56D79N4 and ATV56U41M2 to ATV56D46M2 drive controllers.

Table 11: Recommended Equipment for 1 to $\mathbf{1 0 0} \mathbf{h p} 460$ V Drive Controllers
NOTE: The equipment listed in Tables 4 through 8 is valid for all versions of the circuit diagrams.

| M1 | A1 |  | F1-F3 |  | Input | F10, F11 | Control | KM1 | TS | T1 | F7, F8 | F9 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Motor HP | Con <br> ATV <br> VT <br> Low <br> Noise | oller -••N4 <br> VT | Line Pow Ratings, F CC Fast Acting | ver Fuses Fuse Class <br> T | Fuse Carriers | Control Fuses [2] | Fuse Carriers | Line Contactor | Transient Suppressor | $\begin{gathered} \mathrm{Xfmr} \\ {[7]} \end{gathered}$ | Primary <br> Xfmr <br> Fuses <br> [2] | Sec. <br> Xfmr <br> Fuses <br> [2] |
| 1 | U41 | U41 | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 6 \mathrm{~A}$ | 600 V, 6 A | $9080-$  <br> FB3611CC $[1]$ <br> T60060-3CR $[2]$ | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} 9070- \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 4 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ |
| 2 | U41 | U41 | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 10 \mathrm{~A}$ | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 10 \mathrm{~A}$ | $\begin{array}{\|ll\|} \hline 9080- & \\ \text { FB3611CC } & {[1]} \\ \text { T60060-3CR } & {[2]} \end{array}$ | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} 9070- \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 4 \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ |
| 3 | U41 | U41 | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 15 \mathrm{~A}$ | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 15 \mathrm{~A}$ | $\begin{array}{ll} 9080- \\ \text { FB3611CC [1] } \\ \text { T60060-3CR [2] } \end{array}$ | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{array}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} 9070- \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 4 \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ |
| 4 | U54 | U41 | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 20 \mathrm{~A}$ | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 20 \mathrm{~A}$ | 9080- <br> FB3611CC [1] <br> T60060-3CR [2] | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} 9070- \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 4 \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ |
| 5 | U72 | U54 | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 20 \mathrm{~A}$ | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 20 \mathrm{~A}$ | $\begin{array}{lll} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB3611CC } & {[1]} \\ \text { T60060-3CR } & {[2]} \end{array}$ | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{array}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} 9070- \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 4 \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ |
| 7.5 | - | U72 | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 25 \mathrm{~A}$ | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 25 \mathrm{~A}$ | $\begin{array}{\|ll\|} \hline 9080- & \\ \text { FB3611CC } & {[1]} \\ \text { T60060-3CR } & {[2]} \end{array}$ | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} 9070- \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 4 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ |
| 7.5 | U90 | - |  | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 30 \mathrm{~A}$ | T60060-3CR [2] | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \text { 9070- } \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 4 \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ |
| 10 | D12 | U90 |  | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 35 \mathrm{~A}$ | T60060-3CR [2] | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{array}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} 9070- \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 4 \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ |
| 15 | - | D12 |  | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 60 \mathrm{~A}$ | T60060-3CR [2] | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \hline 9070- \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 4 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ |
| 15 | D16 | - |  | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 60 \mathrm{~A}$ | T60060-3CR [2] | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 9070- \\ & \text { K50D20 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 4 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ |
| 20 | D23 | D16 |  | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 70 \mathrm{~A}$ | T60100-3C [2] | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D3210G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \hline 9070- \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 4 \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ |
| 25 | - | D23 |  | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 90 \mathrm{~A}$ | T60100-3C [2] | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D4011G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \hline 9070- \\ \text { K75D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 3 / 10 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 6 / 10 \end{gathered}$ |
| 30 | D33 | - |  | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 90 \mathrm{~A}$ | T60100-3C [2] | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D5011G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \text { 9070- } \\ \text { K75D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 3 / 10 \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 6 / 10 \end{gathered}$ |
| 40 | D46 | D33 |  | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 125 \mathrm{~A}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 3 \text { ea. } \\ & \text { T60200-1C } \end{aligned}$ | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D8011G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \hline 9070- \\ \text { K75D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 3 / 10 \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 6 / 10 \end{gathered}$ |
| 50 | D54 | D46 |  | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 125 \mathrm{~A}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 3 \text { ea. } \\ & \text { T60200-1C } \end{aligned}$ | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D8011G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \hline 9070- \\ \text { K75D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 3 / 10 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 6 / 10 \end{gathered}$ |
| 60 | D64 | D54 |  | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 175$ A | $\begin{align*} & 3 \mathrm{ea.} \\ & \text { T60200-1C } \tag{2} \end{align*}$ | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { F115G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA9-F980 | $\begin{gathered} 9070- \\ \text { K200D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1-1 / 4 \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ \hline 1-6 / 10 \\ \hline \end{array}$ |
| 75 | D79 | D64 |  | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 200 \mathrm{~A}$ | $\begin{array}{\|ll\|} \hline 3 \mathrm{ea.} \\ \text { T60200-1C } & \text { [2] } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { LC1- } \\ \text { F115G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA9-F980 | $\begin{gathered} \text { 9070- } \\ \text { K200D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1-1 / 4 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1-6 / 10 \\ \hline \end{array}$ |
| 100 | - | D79 |  | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 225 \mathrm{~A}$ | $\begin{array}{\|ll\|} \hline 3 \mathrm{ea.} \\ \mathrm{~T} 60400-1 \mathrm{C} & \text { [2] } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { F150G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA9-F980 | $\begin{gathered} 9070- \\ \text { K200D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1-1 / 4 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ \hline 1-6 / 10 \\ \hline \end{array}$ |

[^4][2] Bussmann part numbers.
[7] T1 has been dimensioned to supply KM1 coil inrush and sealed VA requirements only. Any user control / pilot device additions may require re-dimensioning of T1 VA capacity.

Table 12: Maximum Allowable Line Fuse (F1 to F3) for 460 V Drive Controllers

| Controller ATV56•••N4 | Class CC (Fast-Acting) | Class T | Semiconductor |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| U41, U54, U72 | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 25 \mathrm{~A}$ | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 35 \mathrm{~A}$ | - |
| U90, D12 | - | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 60 \mathrm{~A}$ | - |
| D16, D23 | - | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 100 \mathrm{~A}$ | - |
| D33, D46 | - | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 125 \mathrm{~A}$ | - |
| D54, D64, D79 | - | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 225 \mathrm{~A}$ | - |

Table 13: Recommended Equipment for 1 to 50 hp 208/230 V Drive Controllers

| Motor <br> HP | A1 <br>  <br> Controller <br> ATV56 $\because \bullet M 2$ |  | F1-F3 <br> Line Power Fuses Ratings, Fuse Class |  | Input |  | F1, F2 <br> Control Fuses [2] | Control <br> Fuse Carriers | KM1 <br> Line <br> Contactor | TS <br> Transient Suppressor | T1 <br> Xfmr <br> [7] | F7, F8 <br> Primary Xfmr Fuses [2] |  | F9 <br> Sec. <br> Xfmr <br> Fuses <br> [2] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | Fuse Carriers |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | CC <br> Fast <br> Acting |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1 | U41 | U41 | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 10 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 10 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 9080- \\ & \text { FB3611CC } \\ & \text { T60030-3CR } \end{aligned}$ |  | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{gathered} \text { 9080- } \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 9070- } \\ & \text { K50D20 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ |
| 1.5 | U41 | U41 | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 15 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 15 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 9080- \\ & \text { FB3611CC } \\ & \text { T60030-3CR } \end{aligned}$ |  | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{gathered} \text { 9080- } \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 9070- } \\ & \text { K50D20 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ |
| 2 | U41 | U41 | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 20 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 20 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 9080 \\ & \text { FB3611CC } \\ & \text { T60030-3CR } \end{aligned}$ |  | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 9070- } \\ & \text { K50D20 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ |
| 3 | U41 | U41 | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 25 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 25 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 9080- } \\ & \text { FB3611CC } \\ & \text { T60030-3CR } \end{aligned}$ |  | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{gathered} \text { 9080- } \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 9070- } \\ & \text { K50D20 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { FNQ-R- } \\ & 1 / 2 \end{aligned}$ |
| 4 | - | U41 | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 25 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 25 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 9080- \\ & \text { FB3611CC } \\ & \text { T60030-3CR } \end{aligned}$ |  | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{gathered} \text { 9080- } \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 9070- } \\ & \text { K50D20 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ |
| 5 | U72 | U72 |  | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 35 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | T60060-3C | [2] | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{gathered} \text { 9080- } \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \hline 9070- \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ |
| 7.5 | U90 | U72 |  | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 45 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | T60060-3C | [2] | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{gathered} 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D2510G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \hline 9070- \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ |
| 10 | D12 | U90 |  | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 60 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | T60060-3C | [2] | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{gathered} 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D3210G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \text { 9070- } \\ \text { K50D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 / 2 \end{gathered}$ |
| 15 | D16 | D12 |  | $\begin{gathered} 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ 90 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 3 \text { ea. } \\ & \text { T60100-1C } \end{aligned}$ |  | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{gathered} 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D4010G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \hline 9070- \\ \text { K75D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 3 / 4 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 6 / 10 \end{gathered}$ |
| 20 | D23 | D23 |  | $\begin{aligned} & 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ & 110 \mathrm{~A} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 3 \text { ea. } \\ \text { T60200-1C } \end{array}$ |  | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D8011G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \hline 9070- \\ \text { K75D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 3 / 4 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 6 / 10 \end{gathered}$ |
| 25 | D33 | D23 |  | $\begin{aligned} & 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ & 150 \mathrm{~A} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 3 \text { ea. } \\ & \text { T60200-1C } \end{aligned}$ |  | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{gathered} 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D8011G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} \text { 9070- } \\ \text { K75D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 3 / 4 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 6 / 10 \end{gathered}$ |
| 30 | D33 | D33 |  | $\begin{aligned} & 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ & 150 \mathrm{~A} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 3 \text { ea. } \\ \text { T60200-1C } \end{array}$ |  | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { D8011G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA4-DA2G | $\begin{gathered} 9070- \\ \text { K75D20 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1 \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 3 / 4 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{array}{\|c} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 6 / 10 \end{array}$ |
| 40 | D46 | D33 |  | $\begin{aligned} & 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ & 200 \mathrm{~A} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 3 \text { ea. } \\ \text { T60200-1C } \\ \hline \end{array}$ |  | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{gathered} 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { F115G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA9-F980 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9070- \\ \text { K200D20 } \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 2-1 / 4 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1-6 / 10 \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1-6 / 10 \end{gathered}$ |
| 50 | - | D46 |  | $\begin{aligned} & 600 \mathrm{~V}, \\ & 250 \mathrm{~A} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 3 \text { ea. } \\ & \text { T60400-1C } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |  | KTK-R-3 | $\begin{array}{\|c\|} \hline 9080- \\ \text { FB2611CC } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { LC1- } \\ \text { F115G6 } \end{gathered}$ | LA9-F980 | $\begin{array}{c\|} \hline 9070- \\ \text { K200D20 } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 2-1 / 4 \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { FNQ-R- } \\ & \text { 1-6/10 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { FNQ-R- } \\ 1-6 / 10 \end{gathered}$ |

[1] Square D Class CC Fuse Block numbers.
[2] Bussmann part numbers.
[7] T1 has been dimensioned to supply KM1 coil inrush and sealed VA requirements only. Any user control / pilot device additions may require re-dimensioning of T1 VA capacity.

Table 14: Maximum Allowable Line Fuse (F1 to F3) for 208/230 V Drive Controllers

| Controller ATV56•••M2 | Class CC (Fast-Acting) | Class T |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| U41 | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 25 \mathrm{~A}$ | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 45 \mathrm{~A}$ |
| U72, U90 | - | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 100 \mathrm{~A}$ |
| D12, D16 | - | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 125 \mathrm{~A}$ |
| D23, D33 | - | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 225 \mathrm{~A}$ |
| D46 | - | $600 \mathrm{~V}, 250 \mathrm{~A}$ |

Table 15: Recommended Equipment for all Drive Controllers

| R1 | Potentiometer | 9001 K2106 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| - | Push buttons | 9001 KR1UH13 |
| - | Control station enclosure <br> (accepts R1 and two push <br> buttons) | 9001 KYAF3 |

## Chapter 3 - Start-Up

INTRODUCTION ..... 34
FACTORY SETTINGS ..... 34
CONTROL TYPES ..... 35
Normal ..... 35
NOLD (No Load) ..... 35
MOTOR THERMAL OVERLOAD PROTECTION ..... 36
ADJUSTMENT OF MOTOR OVERLOAD ..... 37
AVAILABLE MOTOR TORQUE ..... 37
Continuous Duty ..... 37
Overtorque Capability and Speed Range ..... 37
Overspeed Operation ( $f \geq 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ) ..... 38
Driving Torque Production Envelope ..... 38
MOTOR CONSIDERATIONS ..... 39
Motor Insulation ..... 39
Motors in Parallel ..... 39
Output Contactor Between Motor and Drive Controller ..... 39
Additional Motor Connected Downstream of the Drive Controller ..... 39

## INTRODUCTION

## FACTORY SETTINGS

The ALTIVAR ${ }^{\mathrm{TM}} 56$ drive controller is software driven. Reconfiguration of the factory default settings may be required. If the factory settings do not match the requirements of your application, or if the drive controller must be reconfigured for a new application, refer to Chapter 5.

Generally, at least four key parameters should be checked and adjusted if necessary prior to motor operation:

- Nominal Current
- Motor Overload
- Control Type
- Rotation Normalization (Note: Changing the wiring of drive controller line terminals L1, L2 and L3 does not affect the motor rotation direction).

If the ALTIVAR 56 drive controller is supplied as part of a larger system, also refer to the documentation supplied with the system for applicable configuration settings. Observe the following precautions when using Normal control types:

- The adjustment range of the Nominal Current parameter is $45 \%$ to $105 \%$ of the drive controller rated output current, allowing the use of motors with horsepower equal to or one horsepower size less than the drive controller horsepower. To adjust the Nominal Current parameter, see Chapter 5.
- Before powering up for the first time, compare motor nameplate current rating with output current in Tables 1 through 4 on pages 3-4, depending on drive controller configuration. If the motor rating is not within $45 \%$ to $105 \%$ of the value in the table, it is necessary to use a different drive controller. For the ATV56U41, use the output current corresponding to motor horsepower and set Motor Power parameter for that value. See Chapter 5.
- The Nominal Current parameter must be set on the drive controller keypad display to match the motor full load current rating. If the Nominal Current parameter cannot be adjusted to the motor full load current, Normal control types cannot be used for the application.
- For multiple motor applications, consult the factory.

The ALTIVAR 56 drive controller is factory set to meet most applications. If the values below are compatible with the application, the drive controller can be started up. If the values listed below do not match the requirements of your application, change their settings with the keypad display. For detailed use of the keypad display, refer to Chapter 5.

Table 16: Factory Settings - Functions

| Function | Factory Setting |
| :--- | :--- |
| Nominal Output Voltage and <br> Frequency | Automatically set at first power-up according to the input frequency: <br> 60 Hz input: 460 V (ATV56••• N 4 units); 230 V (ATV56•••M2 units) |
| Nominal Current | 0.9 times permanent output current of drive controller |
| Volts/Frequency Law | Normal linear law |
| Operating Frequency Range | 60 Hz input: 0.1 to 60 Hz |
| Ramp Times | Acceleration: 3 s <br> Deceleration: 3 s <br> Ramp time: automatically adapted in case of overtorque |
| Braking-To-Standstill <br> (low speed) | Automatic by DC injection for 0.5 s when frequency drops below 0.1 Hz <br> DC current level: 0.7 times the permanent output current of drive <br> controller |
| Motor Thermal Protection | 0.9 times permanent output current of drive controller, see page 36 |
| Control Scheme | Two-wire control |

Table 17: Factory Settings - Inputs and Outputs

| Inputs and Outputs | Terminal | Factory Setting | Programmable |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Logic Inputs | LI1 | Run Enable | No |
|  | LI2 | Run Forward | No |
|  | LI3 | Auto/Manual | Yes |
|  | LI4 | Auto Run | Yes |
| Analog Inputs | Al1 | Speed Reference 1 | Yes |
|  | Al2 | Speed Reference 2 | Yes |
|  | LO1 | At Speed | Yes |
|  | LO2 | Current Limit | Yes |
|  | R1 | Fault | No |
|  | R2 | Running State | Yes |
| Analog Outputs | AO1 | Motor Speed | Yes |
|  | AO2 | Motor Current | Yes |

## CONTROL TYPES

## Normal

NOLD (No Load)

The control type affects the amount of available motor torque. The control type setting is dependent on the type of motor used and the application. Control types are described below. For information on changing the control type, see Chapter 5.

The Normal control type is the factory setting. Normal is a sensorless flux vector control. In order to create high torque at low speeds, the drive controller maintains a $90^{\circ}$ phase relationship between the rotor and stator electromagnetic fields by continuously calculating the position of the rotor in relation to the electrical position of the stator. It is generally applicable on asynchronous motors and provides good torque performance. When using Normal control, the motor horsepower must be equal to or one horsepower size less than the drive controller horsepower.

NOLD control maintains a constant volts/frequency ratio during acceleration but once the motor is stable, voltage to the motor is automatically reduced as a function of load. At light load, the motor voltage is minimized, even at motor base speed. This reduces audible motor noise without reducing motor RPM. NOLD control should not be used with motors in parallel. For more information, see Chapter 5.

## MOTOR THERMAL OVERLOAD PROTECTION

## A CAUTION

## LOSS OF MOTOR OVERLOAD PROTECTION

When using external overload relays connected to drive controller output, overload relay must be capable of operation over the expected range of drive controller output frequencies (including direct current).
When DC injection braking is used:

- Overload relay must be suitable for operation with direct current flowing to the motor.
- Do not use overload relays equipped with current transformers for sensing the motor current.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.

## A CAUTION <br> MOTOR OVERHEATING <br> This drive controller does not provide direct thermal protection for the motor. Use of a thermal sensor in the motor may be required for protection at all speeds and loading conditions. Consult motor manufacturer for thermal capability of motor when operated over desired speed range. <br> Failure to follow these instructions can result in injury or equipment damage.

- ALTIVAR 56 drive controllers provide indirect motor thermal protection by continuously calculating the theoretical thermal state of the motor. The drive controller will trip if this state reaches $109 \%$ of nominal current.
- The microprocessor calculates the theoretical thermal state of the motor from:
- Motor thermal time constant based on assumed motor power
- Operating frequency
- Current absorbed by the motor
- Running time
- Assumed maximum ambient temperature of $40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ around the motor


Figure 21: Thermal Curves

## ADJ USTMENT OF MOTOR OVERLOAD

Overtorque Capability and Speed Range

- External thermal overload relays are required when more than one motor is connected to the output or when the motor connected to the drive controller is less than half of the drive controller rating.
- The thermal state of the drive controller is not automatically reset when power is removed.

To adjust Motor Overload, first select the type of protection in the $7.4 \rightarrow$ Fault Management menu. Two types of protection are available from the Motor Overload screen:

- Self-Cooled Motor
- No Thermal Protection

The drive controller is factory set for a self-cooled motor. Once the type of protection is selected, the Motor Overload current can be set in either the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu or in the $7.4 \rightarrow$ Fault Management menu. Motor Overload can be adjusted from 0.45 to 1.15 times the nominal drive controller current, factory preset at 0.9 times the nominal drive controller current. Adjust Motor Overload value to nominal motor current. For more information on configuring the drive controller, refer to Chapter 5.

For continuous duty reduced speed applications, motor torque derating may be necessary. This derating is linked to two causes:

- Although the current waveform is similar to a sine wave, motor heating is slightly greater than when operating directly from the input line supply. The resulting torque derating is approximately $5 \%$. For 1.0 service factor motors, derating must be considered when choosing the continuous torque production capability of the motor at nameplate speed. For 1.15 service factor motors, derating of motor continuous torque capability is not required at nameplate rated speed.
- For self-ventilating motors, ventilation produced by the internal shaft fan decreases as speed is reduced, therefore requiring derating of the maximum continuous torque capability of the motor. Generally, the required derating occurs at approximately $50 \%$ of nameplate motor speed. Since motor designs vary, consult the motor manufacturer for the required derating for a specific motor.

The driving overtorque capabilities of a given motor are determined by: the motor NEMA design category (Design B, Design D, etc.), no-load (magnetizing) current of the motor at nameplate speed, maximum transient output current of the drive controller, and the applied $\mathrm{V} / \mathrm{Hz}$ at reduced speed.

Maximum transient overtorque capability is typically:

- Normal control type:
- ATV56U41N4 to D79N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D46M2: 110\% over 50:1 speed range
- NOLD control type:
- ATV56U41N4 to D79N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D46M2: 110\% over 10:1 speed range
With NOLD control, the motor overtorque capability begins to decrease below $50 \%$ of motor nameplate speed.


## Overspeed Operation

(f $\geq 60 \mathrm{~Hz}$ )

Driving Torque Production Envelope

With an adjustable frequency drive controller, operation at speeds greater than motor nameplate speed may be possible. The following must be considered:

## A CAUTION

## MACHINERY OVERSPEED

Some motors and/or loads may not be suited for operation above nameplate motor speed and frequency. Consult motor manufacturer before operating motor above rated speed.
Failure to follow this instruction can result in injury or equipment damage.
The drive controller is incapable of producing additional output voltage when operating above the nominal output frequency $(60 \mathrm{~Hz})$. When operating above the nominal output frequency, the available continuous motor torque will begin to decrease along with the motor maximum overtorque capability. Consult the motor manufacturer for continuous and overtorque torque capabilities of the particular motor.

Figure 22 illustrates a typical continuous torque and overtorque driving capability for a typical NEMA Design B, 1.0 service factor motor with variable torque loads.
For 1.15 service factor motors, the continuous torque rating is 1.0 times the motor rated torque value from 50 to $100 \%$ of motor nameplate rated speed.

- Normal control type:
- $100 \%$ torque typical at $50 \%$ of nominal frequency (over 2:1 speed range)
- Torque decreases linearly to $50 \%$ at 0.1 Hz
- Transient overtorque, typical $\pm 10 \%$ :
- ATV56U41N4 to D79N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D46M2: 110\% torque for 60 s.
- NOLD control type:
- $100 \%$ torque typical at $50 \%$ of nominal frequency (over 2:1 speed range)
- Torque decreases linearly to $50 \%$ at $10 \%$ of nominal frequency
- Transient overtorque, typical $\pm 10 \%$ :
- ATV56U41N4 to D79N4 and ATV56U41M2 to D46M2: 110\% torque for 60 s.


Figure 22: Typical Torque Curves

## MOTOR CONSIDERATIONS

## Motor Insulation

## Motors in Paralle

Output Contactor Between Motor and Drive Controller

Additional Motor Connected Downstream of the Drive Controller

Many factors must be considered when controlling a motor with a drive controller. The following sections describe several drive controller characteristics as they relate to motor protection and performance.

ALTIVAR 56 drive controllers use pulse width modulation. Verify that the motor insulation is designed for this modulation method.


Figure 23: Motors in Parallel
To operate motors in parallel, use the keypad display to set the Control Type to "Normal." For information on adjusting and disabling parameters, see Chapter 5.

If three or more motors are to be installed in parallel, consult factory.

When using an output contactor between the drive controller and motor, use of the Bypass application function is recommended. In order to set the motor parameters for optimum performance, the motor must be directly connected to the output of the drive controller at least one time during drive controller power-up. For more information, refer to Chapter 5.

When connecting an additional motor, comply with the recommendation for "Motors in Parallel" on page 39.


Figure 24: Connecting an Additional Motor
If the motor is to be connected to the drive controller while the drive controller is running, the sum of the running motor current(s) plus the expected starting current of the switched motor must not exceed $90 \%$ of the drive controller's transient output current rating.

Table 18: Operating Non-Standard Motors

| Description | OverloadControl <br> Type |
| :--- | :--- |
| Motors in parallel | Disable ${ }^{[1]} \quad$ Normal |
| Additional motor | Disable ${ }^{[1]} \quad$ Normal |
| Synchronous permanent magnet | Not Recommended |
| Synchronous wound field | Not Recommended |
| Synchronous reluctance | Not Recommended |

[1] An external thermal overload relay is required if the drive controller protection is disabled.

## Chapter 4 - Diagnostics

PRECAUTIONS ..... 42
PROCEDURE 1: BUS VOLTAGE MEASUREMENT ..... 42
PROCEDURE 2: INPUT LINE VOLTAGE MEASUREMENT ..... 43
PROCEDURE 3: CHECKING PERIPHERAL EQUIPMENT. ..... 43
PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE ..... 44
LEDS ..... 44
FAULT MESSAGES ..... 45

## PRECAUTIONS

## PROCEDURE 1: BUS VOLTAGE MEASUREMENT

Read the safety statement below before proceeding with any maintenance or troubleshooting procedures.
Table 27 on pages 45-48 lists fault messages (displayed on the keypad display), probable causes or faults, and associated corrective action. Before taking corrective action, remove all power and check the bus voltage (Procedure 1), input line voltage (Procedure 2 on page 43) and peripheral equipment (Procedure 3 on page 43).

## A DANGER

## HAZARDOUS VOLTAGE

Read and understand these procedures before servicing ALTIVAR 56 drive controllers. Installation, adjustment, repair and maintenance of these drive controllers must be performed by qualified personnel.
Failure to follow this instruction will result in death or serious injury.

## A DANGER <br> HAZARDOUS VOLTAGE <br> - This device contains energy storage devices. Read and understand Bus Voltage Measurement Procedure before performing procedure. Measurement of DC bus capacitor voltage must be performed by qualified personnel. <br> - DC bus LED is not an accurate indication of absence of DC bus voltage. <br> - DO NOT short across capacitors or touch unshielded components or terminal strip screw connections with voltage present. <br> - Many parts in this drive controller, including printed wiring boards, operate at line voltage. DO NOT TOUCH. Use only electrically insulated tools. <br> Failure to follow these instructions will result in death or serious injury.

The PA and - terminals are located inside the drive controller (see Figure 25 on page 43). To measure the bus capacitor voltage:

1. Disconnect and verify all power is removed from drive controller.
2. Wait 1 minute to allow the DC bus to discharge.
3. Open the front cover of the drive controller.
4. Set the voltmeter to the 1000 VDC scale. Measure the bus capacitor voltage between the PA and - terminals to verify the DC voltage is less than 45 V . Do not short across capacitor terminals with voltage present!
5. If the bus capacitors are not fully discharged, contact your local representative. Do not operate the drive controller.


ATV56U41N4 to D12N4 and ATV56U41M2 to U90M2


ATV56D16N4 to D79N4 and ATV56D12M2 to D46M2

Figure 25: Location of PA and - Terminals: ATV56U41N4 to D79N4 \& ATV56U41M2 to D46M2

PROCEDURE 2:
INPUT LINE VOLTAGE MEASUREMENT

## PROCEDURE 3: CHECKING PERIPHERAL EQUIPMENT

To measure the input line voltage:

1. Perform Bus Voltage Measurement procedure (see page 42).
2. Attach meter leads to L1 and L2. Set voltmeter to the 600 VAC scale.
3. Reapply power. Check for correct line voltage per drive controller nameplate rating.
4. Remove power and repeat procedure for L2 and L3, and L1 and L3.
5. When all phases have been measured, remove power. Remove meter leads and reinstall covers.

The following equipment may need to be checked. Follow the manufacturer's procedures when checking this equipment.

1. A protective device such as a fuse or circuit breaker may have tripped.
2. A switching device such as a contactor may not be closing at the correct time.
3. Conductors may require repair or replacement.
4. Connection of cables to the motor or connections to ground may need to be checked. Follow NEMA standard procedure WC-53.
5. Motor insulation may need to be checked. Follow NEMA standard procedure MG-1. Do not apply high voltage to drive controller output terminals (U/T1, $\mathrm{V} / \mathrm{T} 2$ or $\mathrm{W} / \mathrm{T} 3$ ). Do not connect high potential dielectric test equipment or insulation resistance tester to the drive controller since the test voltages utilized may damage the drive controller. Always disconnect the drive controller from the conductors or motor while performing such tests.

## PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

## LEDS

Before performing preventive maintenance, remove all power and check the bus voltage (Procedure 1 on page 42).
The following preventive maintenance procedures are recommended at regular intervals:

- Check the condition and tightness of the connections.
- Make sure the ventilation is effective and temperature around the drive controller remains at an acceptable level.
- Remove dust and debris from the drive controller, if necessary.
- If anything unusual occurs when putting the drive controller into service or during operation, be sure all recommendations relating to the environment, mounting and connecting the drive controller have been followed.

The LEDs on the front of the drive controller indicate the following:


Figure 26: Drive Controller LEDs

## FAULT MESSAGES

The ALTIVAR 56 drive controller can store up to eight faults and display them as messages on the keypad display. These fault messages, listed in Table 27, allow access to Fault History Screens, which display the drive controller run status at the time of each fault. For more information on Fault History Screens, see Chapter 5.

Figure 27: Fault Messages

| Fault Message | Probable Cause | Troubleshooting Procedure |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| (Display off or partial display) | 1. No control supply. <br> 2. Control voltage too low. | 1. Check input line voltage (Procedure 2 on page 43). <br> 2. Check fuses and circuit breaker (Procedure 3 on page 43). <br> 3. Check CL1-CL2 control terminal connections. |
| IN-PHASE LOSS (Input phase loss) | 1. No supply to terminals L1-L2-L3. <br> 2. Power fuses blown. <br> 3. Brief input line failure ( $\mathrm{t} \geq$ 200 ms ). <br> 4. Internal connections. | 1. Check input line voltage (Procedure 2 on page 43). <br> 2. Check fuses and circuit breaker (Procedure 3 on page 43). <br> 3. Reset drive controller. <br> 4. Check connections. |
| UNDERVOLTAGE ${ }^{[1]}$ | 1. Supply too low: $V \leq 380 \vee(A T V 56 \cdots \cdots N 4)$ $\mathrm{V} \leq 170 \vee(A T V 56 \cdots \cdots \mathrm{M} 2)$ <br> 2. Temporary voltage drop ( t $\geq 200 \mathrm{~ms}$ ). <br> 3. Internal connections. | 1. Check input line voltage (Procedure 2 on page 43). Check Nominal Motor Voltage parameter (see Chapter 5). <br> 2. Reset drive controller. <br> 3. Check connections. |
| AC-LIN. OVERVOL ${ }^{[1]}$ (AC Line Overvoltage) | 1. Supply too high: $\begin{aligned} & V \geq 550 \text { V (ATV56 •••N4) } \\ & V \geq 270 \text { V (ATV56•••M2) } \end{aligned}$ | 1. Check input line voltage (Procedure 2 on page 43). Check Nominal Motor Voltage parameter (see Chapter 5). |
| DC-BUS OVERVOL ${ }^{[1]}$ (DC Bus Overvoltage) | 1. Overvoltage or overcurrent due to excessive braking or an overhauling load. | 1. Increase deceleration time. Add braking option if necessary. Reset is possible if line voltage $\leq 550 \mathrm{~V}$. |
| OVERTEMP DRIVE (Drive Overtemp.) | 1. Heat sink temperature too high ( $\geq 203^{\circ} \mathrm{F} / 95^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ). | 1. Check motor load, fan and ambient temperature around drive controller. Wait for drive controller to cool down before resetting. |
| MOT. OVERLOAD (Motor Overload) | 1. If thermal trip setting is $\geq$ $118 \%$ of normal thermal state (109\% of nominal current), thermal trip is due to prolonged overload or output phase failure. <br> 2. Motor power rating too low for application. | 1. Check setting of MOT. OVERLOAD parameter and compare with motor In. Check load and compare with operating speed. Check braking conditions (possibility of single phase operation). Wait approximately 7 minutes before resetting. <br> 2. Verify motor and drive controller selection is correct for application. <br> 3. For motors with continuous current rating less than 50\% of drive controller current rating, see Chapter 5. |
| ${ }^{[1]}$ Fault cannot be disabled; always causes a freewheel stop. <br> ${ }^{[2]}$ Occurs upon power up only. |  |  |

Figure 27: Fault Messages (Continued)

| Fault Message | Probable Cause | Troubleshooting Procedure |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SHORT CIRCUIT [1] <br> (SHORT CKT_= <br> Desaturation SHORT CKT. = LIC exceeded) | 1. Short circuit or grounding on drive controller output. (Short circuit_ or short circuit.) <br> 2. Internal drive fault. (Short circuit_) <br> 3. Motor improperly applied. (Short circuit.) | 1. Remove all power. With drive controller disconnected, check connecting cables and motor insulation. <br> 2. Use drive controller self-diagnostics. See Chapter 5. <br> 3. See "MOTOR CONSIDERATIONS" on page 39. |
| PRECHARGE FAIL ${ }^{[2]}$ | 1. Capacitor charge relay closure control fault. | 1. Check connections in drive controller after following Bus Voltage Measurement Procedure (see page 42). |
| INTERNAL FAULT ${ }^{\text {[1] }}$ | 1. Internal connection fault. <br> 2. Missing connections on CL1 and CL2. | 1. Check internal connections after following Bus Voltage Measurement procedure (see page 42). |
| LOSS FOLLOWER | 1. Loss of $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ signal on Al2 input. | 1. Verify signal connections. <br> 2. Check signal. |
| GROUND FAULT ${ }^{[1]}$ | 1. Short circuit of phase to earth or grounding on the output of the drive controller. | 1. Remove all power. With drive controller disconnected, check connecting cables and motor insulation. <br> 2. Use drive controller diagnostics. See Chapter 5. |
| MEMORY FAILURE ${ }^{[2]}$ | 1. EEPROM memory storage fault. | 1. Recall factory or customer settings with keypad. |
| AUTO-TEST FAIL ${ }^{[2]}$ | 1. Main control board failure. | 1. Remove all power. Check control board connections with drive controller disconnected. <br> 2. Replace main control board. |
| CONTROL SUPPLY [2] | 1. CL1/CL2 not connected. | 1. Check connection of CL1 and CL2. |
| OVERSPEED | 1. Output frequency is $20 \%$ above Maximum Frequency parameter setting (no tachometer present). | 1. Check load base speed and power rating, compare with operating speed and drive controller/motor power rating. <br> 2. Check setting of damping and bandwidth (if used) adjustments. |
| DYNAMIC BRAKE | 1. DB transistor short circuit. <br> 2. DB resistor short or open circuited. <br> 3. Braking resistor thermal contact tripped. | 1. Remove all power. Check connecting cables and DB resistor with drive controller disconnected. <br> 2. Use drive controller selfdiagnostics. See Chapter 5. <br> 3. Check dynamic brake connections. Change resistor if necessary. |
| LINK FAULT | 1. Internal fault. <br> 2. Software execution stopped. | 1. Note LED sequence on drive controller: <br> - FAULT, CAUTION, POWER all illuminated, or <br> - CAUTION, POWER illuminated <br> 2. Cycle power. <br> 3. If fault persists, replace keypad or main control board. |

${ }^{\text {[1] }}$ Fault cannot be disabled; always causes a freewheel stop.
[2] Occurs upon power up only.

Figure 27: Fault Messages (Continued)

| Fault Message | Probable Cause | Troubleshooting Procedure |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SEQUENCE T. OUT <br> (Sequence Time out) | 1. Sequence input not received <br> after Run command within <br> programmed time (Bypass <br> function). | 1. Check connection between user- <br> supplied contact and logic input, <br> ensuring it is connected to programmed <br> input. <br> 2. |
| PROCify operation of contact. |  |  |
| 3. Verify operation of external control |  |  |
| sequencing. |  |  |

${ }^{\text {[1] }}$ Fault cannot be disabled; always causes a freewheel stop.
[2] Occurs upon power up only.

The additional faults listed in Table 19 may be displayed if an option module is installed and a fault occurs.

Table 19: Fault Messages from Option Modules

| Fault Messages | Probable Cause | Troubleshooting Procedure |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| OVERSPEED | Without tachometer: <br> 1. Output frequency is 20\% above <br> Maximum Frequency parameter <br> setting. | 1. Check load base speed and power <br> rating, compare with operating <br> speed and drive controller/motor <br> power rating. |
|  | With tachometer: <br> 1. Incorrect adjustment of <br> tachometer feedback. <br> 2. Machine overload. | 1. Check feedback. |
|  | 1. User defined. | 2. Check load base speed and power <br> rating, compare with operating <br> speed and drive controller/motor <br> power rating. <br> Check tachometer connection. |
| FEEDBACK LOSS | 1. No tachometer feedback signal. | 1. Check tachometer wiring. |

Other faults may be displayed depending on how the drive controller is programmed. For more information on faults and self-diagnostics, refer to Chapter 5.

## Chapter 5 - Configuration

KEYPAD DISPLAY ..... 50
LCD Display ..... 50
ENT Key ..... 50
ESC Key ..... 50
Arrow ( $\mathbf{\Delta} \boldsymbol{\nabla}$ ) Keys ..... 50
Numeric Keys ..... 50
Function Keys ..... 51
Key Cover ..... 51
STOP Key ..... 51
RUN Key ..... 52
Keypad Display Connections ..... 52
MENU OVERVIEW. ..... 53
Selecting the Language ..... 53
Drive Configuration ..... 53
Drive Identification ..... 53
Display Mode ..... 53
Main Menu ..... 54
DISPLAY MODE ..... 55
Drive Controller Running ..... 55
Drive Controller in Fault State ..... 55
ACCESS LEVELS ..... 56
Total Lock ..... 56
Total Unlock ..... 56
MENU SUMMARY: USING THIS CHAPTER ..... 57
$1 \rightarrow$ PARAMETER SETTING MENU ..... 58
2 $\rightarrow$ //O MAP ..... 61
$3 \rightarrow$ FAULT HISTORY ..... 62
$4 \rightarrow$ DISPLAY CONFIGURATION MENU ..... 62
5 $\rightarrow$ KEYPAD CONFIGURATION MENU ..... 64
$6 \rightarrow$ DRIVE CONFIGURATION MENU ..... 66
$6.1 \rightarrow$ Torque Type ..... 67
$6.2 \rightarrow$ Command Type ..... 67
$6.3 \rightarrow$ Motor Power (ATV56U41 only) ..... 67
2-Wire Command ..... 68
3-Wire Command ..... 68
$7 \rightarrow$ GENERAL CONFIGURATION MENU ..... 69
7.1 $\rightarrow$ Drive Parameters ..... 69
7.11 $\rightarrow$ Motor Parameters ..... 69
$7.12 \rightarrow$ Control Parameters ..... 74
7.13 $\rightarrow$ Control Type ..... 76
$7.2 \rightarrow$ Application Functions ..... 77
$7.3 \rightarrow$ Output Assignments ..... 96
$7.4 \rightarrow$ Fault Management ..... 100
$8 \rightarrow$ DIAGNOSTIC MODE. ..... 109
$9 \rightarrow$ DRIVE INITIALIZATION MENU ..... 112

## KEYPAD DISPLAY

LCD Display

## ENT Key

ESC Key

Arrow ( $\mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{\nabla}$ ) Keys

## Numeric Keys

The ALTIVAR 56 drive controller includes a keypad display mounted on front for:

- Identification of the drive controller
- Display of parameters and faults
- Recall and adjustment of drive controller parameters
- Local command of the drive controller


Figure 28: Keypad Layout
The LCD display is a $128 \times 64$ point graphic screen consisting of six 21-character lines. The display can be programmed to show text lines and bar graphs, and has reverse video capability for enhancement of text or numbers on the screen.

Use the ENT (Enter) key to:

- Confirm a menu selection
- Go to the next menu

Use the ESC (Escape) key to:

- Reset an adjustment to its original value
- Leave the present menu and go back to the previous menu

Use the arrow keys to:

- Scroll through the screens and menus
- Select an item or function
- Increase or decrease numeric parameters (i.e. from 12.5 A to 12.6 A ). The arrow keys adjust the portion of the parameter value highlighted on the display. To increase the scrolling speed, press and hold the arrow key for two seconds.

Use the numeric and decimal point keys to enter numeric values for parameter adjustments. The format and limits of values entered are checked by the control software according to the nature of the parameter.

## Function Keys

Key Cover

STOP Key

Use the function keys to program the drive controller or issue commands. Operation of the function keys depends on whether the drive controller is in Terminal Command or Keypad Command mode.

In Terminal Command (drive controller receives its Run, Stop, and Reference Frequency signals from the drive controller terminal strip) the function keys operate as follows:

- F1 calls up the Help menu
- F2 returns to the Display Mode screen (page 53 and page 55), unless set for Terminal/Keypad switching in the $5 \rightarrow$ Keypad Configuration menu
- F3 functions as a jump key

To jump directly to a menu, press F3. A window will appear. Enter the menu's index number and press ENT. The display will jump directly to that menu. Index numbers are found in the upper left corner of the display for each menu, and are also listed in Table 22 on page 57. Throughout this manual, menu names are preceded by their index numbers. For example, in a reference such as " $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting," " 1 " is the index number for the Parameter Setting menu.

In Keypad Command (drive controller receives its Run, Stop and Reference Frequency signals from the keypad display). The functions of the keys are:

- F1 Resets the drive controller after a fault.
- F2 Scrolls through the displays.
- F3 Not assigned (No functionality).

Terminal Command and Keypad Command are described further in the $5 \rightarrow$ Keypad Configuration menu section (page 64).

A plastic cover is factory-installed over the RUN and STOP keys. For access to RUN and STOP keys and local command of drive controller, this cover must be removed. See Figure 32 on page 52. The key cover can be re-installed to cover RUN and STOP keys.

The STOP key, active in Terminal and Keypad Command modes, commands normal stop of the motor. The motor follows ramp as determined by selected deceleration time.

A WARNING

## INABILITY TO INITIATE STOP

- With the key cover removed, the STOP key is enabled and active in both Terminal Command and Keypad Command modes.
- When the key cover is installed, the STOP key is not accessible. Verify that appropriate system STOP functions are in place when the STOP key is not accessible.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

RUN Key

## Keypad Display <br> Connections

The RUN key commands the motor to run when the drive controller is in Keypad Command mode. The motor follows the ramp determined by the selected acceleration time. LI1 (Run Enable) on J12 must be high for the RUN key to command the motor.


Figure 29: Run Timing Diagram


Figure 30: Rear View of Keypad Display


Figure 31: Removing Keypad


NOTE: Keypad supplied with this drive controller has been matched with the software revision level. Do not install keypad on another drive controller. Installation of an incompatible keypad may result in non-recognition of the keypad by the drive controller at power-up.

Figure 32: Access to RUN and STOP Keys

## MENU OVERVIEW

## Selecting the Language

Drive Configuration

## Drive Identification

## A WARNING

## UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT ACTION

- Unlocking keypad display (page 56) gives access to parameters.
- Parameter changes affect drive controller operation. Most parameter changes require pressing ENT. Some parameter changes, such as reference frequency take effect as soon as you press the $\mathbf{\triangle}$ or $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ key.
- Read and understand this manual before using the keypad display.

Failure to follow these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

When drive controller is powered up for the first time, the Language menu appears allowing you to choose the language used on all menus. Scroll through the language choices with the $\boldsymbol{\Delta}$ and $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ keys, and make a selection by pressing ENT. Upon subsequent power ups, the display passes directly to the Display screen. To display Language menu after first power up, press the ESC key twice.

The Drive Configuration screen shows factory settings of the configuration parameters. Voltage is fixed at 460 V for the 460 V units (ATV56•••N4) and is set to 230 V at first power up for 230 V units (ATV56•••M2). This screen is only shown on first power up or after a total return to factory settings. Advance to the Drive Configuration screen from the Language menu by pressing ENT.

The Drive Identification screen is automatically displayed on power up, or can be accessed from the Drive Configuration screen by pressing ENT. The Drive Identification screen displays the following nameplate information:

- ATV56 catalog number
- Software version
- Motor power
- Drive nominal current
- I maximum/I nominal
- Voltage

From the Drive Identification screen, press ENT to advance to the Display screen. While the drive controller is running, the default display is a bar graph showing reference frequency and drive status. The type and number of functions displayed can be modified in the $4 \rightarrow$ Display Configuration menu (page 62). If the drive controller is in fault state, the Display screen shows the fault type. If the drive controller has been programmed for Keypad Command, the last line of the Display screen indicates the functions of F1, F2, and F3 keys.

## Main Menu

From the Display screen, press ENT to advance to the Main menu. Depending on the access level selected (page 56), the Main menu contains two (Total Lock), or nine (Total Unlock) sub-menus.


Figure 33: Menus Viewed at First Power Up (Factory Default Screens)

## DISPLAY MODE

## Drive Controller Running

## Drive Controller in Fault

 State

When the drive controller is running, the Display screen can show one bar graph, two bar graphs, or fourteen items in four tables. Factory setting is one bar graph displaying reference frequency. Drive controller status is also displayed in the lower right corner of the screen. Status codes are defined in Table 20. The type and number of functions shown can be modified in the $4 \rightarrow$ Display Configuration menu (page 62) when access level is set to Total Unlock.


When a fault appears, the drive controller trips, the motor follows the programmed fault stop (page 100), and the Display screen shows the fault type. Table 21 lists the faults that the drive controller can display.

Table 20: Display Mode Status Codes

| Code | Definition | Code | Definition |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| NLP | No Line Power (control power supplied <br> separately) | CLI | Current Limit |
| RDY | Drive Ready | DCB | DC Injection Braking |
| RUN | Drive Running (at speed) | NRP | No Run Permissive (LI1 open) |
| $C$ | Forward Direction | BRK | Braking |
| ACC | Accelerating | FLT | Fault |
| DEC | Decelerating |  |  |

Table 21: Faults Displayed on Display Mode Screen

| Fault Designation | Description |
| :--- | :--- |
| IN-PHASE LOSS | Input Phase Loss: loss of power or blown fuses. A brief loss of input supply <br> phase $(\leq 200 \mathrm{~ms})$ is not detected |
| UNDERVOLTAGE | Undervoltage: <br> input voltage $\leq 380 \mathrm{~V}(60 \mathrm{~Hz}, 460 \mathrm{~V})$ ATV56 $\bullet \bullet \mathrm{N} 4$ or <br> input voltage $\leq 170 \mathrm{~V}$ ATV56 $\bullet \bullet \mathrm{M} 2$ or <br> temporary voltage loss $(\mathrm{t} \geq 200 \mathrm{~ms})$ |
| AC-LIN.OVERVOL. | AC line overvoltage: input voltage to power supply too high <br> input voltage $\geq 550 \mathrm{~V}(60 \mathrm{~Hz}, 460 \mathrm{~V})$ ATV56 $\bullet \bullet \mathrm{N} 4$ or <br> input voltage $\geq 270 \mathrm{~V}$ ATV56 $\bullet \bullet \mathrm{M} 2$ |
| DRIVE OVERTEMP. | Drive overtemperature: heatsink temperature too high |
| MOT. OVERLOAD | Motor overload: thermal trip because of prolonged overload or running in single <br> phase on the output, or motor power rating too low for application |
| LOSS FOLLOWER | Loss of follower: loss of the 4-20 mA or $20-4$ mA reference at AI2 input |
| OUT. PHASE LOSS | Loss of an output phase |
| DC-BUS OVERVOL. | DC bus overvoltage/overcurrent due to excessive braking or overhauling load |

Table 21: Faults Displayed on Display Mode Screen (Continued)

| Fault Designation | Description |
| :--- | :--- |
| SHORT CIRCUIT or <br> SHORT CIRCUIT. | Short circuit or grounding on drive controller output; may be internal or external |
| GROUND FAULT | Ground fault: short circuit to earth on the output of the drive controller |
| PRECHARGE FAIL | Precharge failure: capacitor precharge relay fault |
| INTERNAL FAULT | Internal fault or missing connections on CL1 and CL2 |
| MEMORY FAILURE | Error in storing to EEPROM |
| AUTO-TEST FAIL | Main control board failure |
| OVERSPEED | Without a tachometer, fault occurs when output frequency is 20\% above <br> Maximum Frequency parameter setting for 250 mS. |
| SEQUENCE T. OUT | Sequence time-out: sequence input not received after Run command within <br> programmed time. Used with Bypass function. See page 85. |
| PROCESS TIME OUT | Process time-out: process input not received after Run command within <br> programmed time. Used with Bypass function. See page 85. |
| DYNAMIC BRAKE | Dynamic brake resistor lost or connection open. See page 108. |
| TRANS. SHORT C. or | Short circuit in transistor |
| GF | OPEN TRANSISTOR | Transistor has failed open,$~$| CONTROL SUPPLY | CL1/CL2 not connected. Only recognized upon power-up. |
| :--- | :--- |
| -- No Fault-- | No fault recorded |

## ACCESS LEVELS

## Total Lock

The keypad display can be locked to limit access to drive controller configuration and adjustment parameters. Two access levels are available: Total Lock (factory default) and Total Unlock.

Access levels are selected by positioning the access locking switch on back of the keypad display (Figure 30 on page 52).

When the access locking switch is in locked position, the keypad display is in Total Lock mode. Total Lock is the factory preset condition of the drive controller.

In Total Lock mode, the choices available from the Main menu are $2 \rightarrow$ I/OMap and $3 \rightarrow$ Fault History. If Keypad Command is active (page 64), the keypad display can be used for local command of the drive controller; however, all drive controller adjustment and configuration parameters are protected from change.


Figure 34: Main Menu in Total Lock Mode
To change access level when in Total Lock mode:

1. If Keypad Command is active, from any point in the Level $1 \& 2$ Software stop the drive controller, disconnect the keypad display, and set the access locking switch to unlock. If Terminal Command is active, it is not necessary to stop the drive controller before disconnecting the keypad display.
2. Reconnect the keypad display.
3. Press ENT and display will return to the Drive Configuration menu. The drive controller is now in Total Unlock mode. Press ENT to advance through the power-up screens to the Main menu.

When the access locking switch is in the unlocked position, all drive controller adjustments and configurations are accessible from the Main menu.

## MENU SUMMARY: USING THIS CHAPTER

Table 22 is an overview of all sub-menus accessible from the Main menu. Use the table as a reference for menu index numbers. The menu index numbers can be used with the F3 key when it is set to Jump (factory setting) to go directly to the associated menu. Use the table also as a guide to this manual. To find a menu description in the manual, go to the page number indicated in the table.

Table 22: Menu Summary

| Access Level |  |  | Index No | Menu | Page No. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Total Lock | Partial Unlock | Total Unlock |  |  |  |
| No | Yes ${ }^{[1]}$ | Yes ${ }^{[1]}$ | $1 \rightarrow$ | Parameter Setting | 58 |
| Yes ${ }^{[1]}$ | Yes ${ }^{[1]}$ | Yes ${ }^{[1]}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 2 \rightarrow \\ & 2.1 \rightarrow \\ & 2.2 \rightarrow \\ & 2.3 \rightarrow \\ & 2.4 \rightarrow \end{aligned}$ | I/O Map Logic Input Map Analog Input Map Logic Output Map Analog Output Map | 61 |
| Yes ${ }^{[1]}$ | Yes ${ }^{11]}$ | Yes ${ }^{11]}$ | $3 \rightarrow$ | Fault History | 62 |
| No | No | Yes ${ }^{[1]}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 4 \rightarrow \\ & 4.1 \rightarrow \\ & 4.2 \rightarrow \\ & 4.3 \rightarrow \end{aligned}$ | Display Configuration One Bar Graph Two Bar Graphs Scroll, Four Tables | $\begin{aligned} & 62 \\ & 63 \\ & 64 \\ & 64 \end{aligned}$ |
| No | No | Yes | $5 \rightarrow$ | Keypad Configuration | 64 |
| No | Yes | Yes | $\begin{aligned} & 6 \rightarrow \\ & 6.1 \rightarrow \\ & 6.2 \rightarrow \\ & 6.3 \rightarrow \end{aligned}$ | Drive Configuration Torque Type Command Type Motor Power (ATV56U41 only) | $\begin{aligned} & 66 \\ & 67 \\ & 67 \\ & 67 \end{aligned}$ |
| No | No | Yes | $\begin{aligned} & 7 \rightarrow \\ & 7.1 \rightarrow \\ & 7.2 \rightarrow \\ & 7.3 \rightarrow \\ & 7.4 \rightarrow \end{aligned}$ | General Configuration Drive Parameters Application Functions Output Assignments Fault Management | $\begin{gathered} \hline 69 \\ 69 \\ 77 \\ 96 \\ 100 \end{gathered}$ |
| No | No | Yes | $8 \rightarrow$ | Diagnostic Mode | 109 |
| No | No | Yes | $\begin{aligned} & 9 \rightarrow \\ & 9.1 \rightarrow \\ & 9.2 \rightarrow \\ & 9.3 \rightarrow \end{aligned}$ | Drive Initialization Total Factory Settings Store User Settings Recall User Settings | $\begin{aligned} & 112 \\ & 112 \\ & 112 \\ & 113 \end{aligned}$ |

${ }^{[1]}$ Accessible with motor running

## $1 \rightarrow$ PARAMETER SETTING MENU

| 1+FARPM METER SETTINTj |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| LOW SPEEI | : $\mathrm{aHz}^{\text {c }}$ |
| HIGH SPEEII | 60 Hz |
| ACCELERHTION | : 3 E |
| IECELERHTION | $3 E$ |
| * \% ENT to | f! |
| PROFILE |  |
| IPAPINS | - 33/, |
| HOT. OUERLOAI |  |
| SP [inIN | : +9999 |
| OFFSET | : +0 |
| KP | Q07\% |
| KI |  |
| PI FLT RHTIO | 1007/4 |
| PI SET POINT |  |
| PI SP MENUAFL | 0 |

The functions accessible from the Parameter Setting menu depend not only on the control type selected (page 76) but also on whether or not the drive controller is configured for PI Regulator. Factory configuration is Normal control type and no PI Regulator. Table 23 on page 58 illustrates the functions available with the various configurations.

Table 23: Parameter Setting Menu

| Variable Torque or Variable Torque Low Noise |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Normal | NOLD |
| Low Speed | Low Speed |
| High Speed | High Speed |
| Acceleration | Acceleration |
| Deceleration | Deceleration |
| Profile | Damping |
| Damping | Motor Overload |
| Motor Overload | SP Gain ${ }^{[1]}$ <br> Offset ${ }^{[1]}$ <br> KP [1] <br> KI [1] <br> PI FLT Ratio ${ }^{[1]}$ <br> PI Set Point ${ }^{[2]}$ <br> PI SP Manual ${ }^{[3]}$ |

${ }^{[1]}$ Appears only if Yes, Set Point has been selected in the PI Regulator menu (page 88)
${ }^{[2]}$ Appears only if Keypad has been selected for setpoint entry in the Set Point menu (page 89)
${ }^{[2]}$ Appears only if Keypad has been selected for manual setpoint entry in the Setpoint Manual menu (page 94)

The following sections describe the functions available from the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu. To change the settings of these parameters, scroll to the parameter on the menu, type in a value, and press ENT.

Low Speed corresponds to the lower limit of the speed reference at AI1 or AI2 (see Figure 35) and limits the minimum commanded running frequency to a value between 0 and High Speed. It does not affect the starting frequency. If the drive controller is commanded to run below the programmed Low Speed, the output will be limited to the Low Speed value. Factory setting is 0 Hz .


Figure 35: Speed Reference

High Speed

## Acceleration Time

## Deceleration Time

## Damping

High Speed corresponds to the upper limit of the speed reference at AI1 or AI2 (see Figure 35) and limits the maximum commanded running frequency to a value between Low Speed and Maximum Frequency (set in the $7.12 \rightarrow$ Control Parameters menu). If the drive controller is commanded to run above the programmed High Speed, the output will be limited to the High Speed value. Factory setting is 60 Hz .

Acceleration Time is adjustable between 0.1 and 999.9 seconds and represents the time the drive controller will take to accelerate between 0 Hz and Nominal Frequency (set in the $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters menu). Acceleration Time determines the base line slope used by the drive controller to accelerate between frequencies. Factory setting is 3 seconds.

If the acceleration slope is too steep for the motor to accelerate the connected load, the acceleration slope will be modified to minimize the possibility of a nuisance trip.

Deceleration Time is adjustable between 0.1 and 999.9 seconds and represents the time the drive controller will take to decelerate between Nominal Frequency (set in the $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters menu) and 0 Hz . Deceleration Time determines the base line slope used by the drive controller to decelerate between frequencies. Factory setting is 3 seconds.

If the deceleration slope is too steep for the motor to decelerate the connected load, the deceleration slope will be modified to minimize the possibility of a nuisance trip.

Damping is available with any drive controller configuration (page 67). This parameter adjusts the integral gain of the frequency loop to match the inertial response of the load to the frequency response of the drive controller. The adjustable range varies with the drive controller configuration:

- 1 to $100 \%$ for NOLD control with either variable torque configuration
- 1 to $800 \%$ for Normal control with either variable torque configuration

When Damping is properly adjusted and the drive controller is not in current limit or ramp modification, the motor speed should follow the speed reference ramp without oscillation and with little overshoot. During steady-state operation with constant load, the motor speed should remain constant with no oscillation. If the motor load changes, the drive controller should correct the motor speed disturbance rapidly with little or no oscillation.

## Profile

The factory preset value of Damping is $20 \%$ which corresponds to 1.5 times the factory set motor inertia for the selected motor power rating. Most applications do not require Damping adjustment.

If the motor speed oscillates or overshoots the desired speed during changes in the motor speed reference or during steady-state operation with constant load, Damping is set too low and should be increased.
If the motor speed follows the speed reference ramp sluggishly or tends to vary during steady-state operation with constant load, Damping is set too high and should be decreased.

Profile is used only when the drive controller is configured for Normal control type. This parameter shapes the $\mathrm{V} / \mathrm{Hz}$ profile of the output. Profile can be set to a value between 0 and 100, factory preset to 20.

During changes in speed command, the $\mathrm{V} / \mathrm{Hz}$ profile becomes linear, intersecting the Vn and fn points of Figure 36. As a result, there is no reduction in available motor torque during speed changes.


Shaded area denotes zone within which drive functions when Profile is set between 0 and 100.

Figure 36: Profile
Profile is not available when NOLD control type is selected.

## Motor Overload

## A CAUTION

## MOTOR OVERHEATING

This drive controller does not provide direct thermal protection for the motor. Use of a thermal sensor in the motor may be required for protection at all speeds or loading conditions. Consult motor manufacturer for thermal capability of motor when operated over desired speed range.
Failure to follow this instruction can result in injury or equipment damage.

Motor Overload enables the drive controller to protect a standard induction motor from overload. This function can replace a conventional thermal overload relay for single motor applications; however, multi-motor applications require individual external thermal overload motor protection.
This function is more effective in protecting a motor operated from a drive controller because it considers motor speed as well as time and current in its protection algorithm. This is important since most motors applied on drive controllers are self-cooled, and their cooling effectiveness declines at lower speeds. The drive controller's protection algorithm integrates motor current over time, taking into account factors such as stop time and idle time. Two types of motor overload protection can be selected from the $7.4 \rightarrow$ Fault Management menu (page 100 for details):

1. For Self-Cooled Motor (factory setting)
2. No thermal protection

## $2 \rightarrow$ I/O MAP

Motor Overload can be adjusted from 0.45 to 1.15 times the nominal drive controller current, as displayed on the Drive Identification screen. Factory preset is 0.9. Adjust Motor Overload value to nominal motor current (see page 70).


The I/O map is a series of display-only screens that show the analog and logic input/output terminal assignments. I/O Map is helpful for determining which input/output terminals are assigned to which software functions, and for displaying the state of the inputs/outputs while operating the drive controller.

The I/O Map consists of four three-column, display-only screens. The left column of each lists the inputs/outputs, the middle column shows the input/output functions, and the right column displays states or values. I/O states are given as 0 (low logic state) or 1 (high logic state). Refer to Chapter 2 for definitions of logic 1 and logic 0 for applicable logic I/O. Analog I/O values are given in percentages. See page 99 for base of percentage displayed.

## 3 $\rightarrow$ FAULT HISTORY

## Troubleshooting

4 $\rightarrow$ DISPLAY CONFIGURATION MENU

| 3*FAIULT HISTORY |
| :---: |
| FḞULL NAPME STA |
| IN-PHASE LOSS RI |
| AC-LIN, DUERUOL R |
| MOT. OUERLOAI A |
| NT |

The Fault History screen displays the last eight faults stored by the drive controller, and run status at time of fault. The most recent fault is displayed first in the list. The arrow $(\leftarrow)$ under the " $\mathrm{M}^{\prime}$ column is used to mark a fault so that it can be followed for future observation.

Table 24 lists drive controller run status codes. Table 21 on page 55 lists the faults that can be displayed on the Fault History Screen.

Table 24: Fault History Screen Run Status Codes

| Code | Code Definition |
| :--- | :--- |
| ACC | Accelerating |
| DEC | Decelerating |
| RUN | Drive controller running (at speed) |
| BRK | Braking (dynamic or regenerative) |
| RDY | Drive controller stopped and ready |
| DCB | DC injection braking |
| CLI | Current limit active |
| FLT | Faulted |

Refer to Chapter 4 for troubleshooting procedure when a fault is displayed. In the case of an internal drive controller fault, autodiagnostics can be run to locate the failed component. See the $8 \rightarrow$ Diagnostic Mode menu on page 109 .

By default, the Display screen shows reference frequency in bar graph form.


The type and number of functions shown can be modified from the $4 \rightarrow$ Display Configuration menu. Modification is possible while the drive controller is running.


Three display options are available from the $4 \rightarrow$ Display Configuration screen. An arrow $(\leftarrow)$ indicates the active display option.

- One function displayed in bar graph form
- Two functions displayed in bar graph form
- Eleven functions displayed in three tables

The One Bar Graph and Two Bar Graph choices have sub-menus. From a list of nine items in these sub-menus, you may select the functions to be displayed. The list of functions is the same for both display choices, and is illustrated in the $4.1 \rightarrow$ One Bar Graph menu.


Use the $\boldsymbol{\Delta}$ and $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ keys to select a function from the $4.1 \rightarrow$ One Bar Graph menu and press ENT.

Five functions on the menu have associated screens for entering actual values. For motor RPM, enter the motor rated speed. The controller will automatically select the closest standard motor speed: 700, 900, 1200, 1800, or 3600.

For Machine Speed Reference, Machine Speed, PI Set Point, and PI Feedback, first enter the scale factor that multiplies motor rated speed in Hz to determine the application units. The scale factor, programmable from 1 to 100, is factory preset at 1.

NOTE: There is only one scaling factor entry available for Machine Speed Reference, Machine Speed, PI Set Point, and PI Feedback. The scaling factor chosen for Machine Speed, for example, will be the same scaling factor fused for PI Set Point.

Second, enter a 4-character label for the application ("ft/s", for example) in the Units Edition screen. Using the $\boldsymbol{\Delta}$ (moves up) and $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ (moves down) keys, scroll among the alphabetical characters and press ENT to select a character. Each selected character will appear in the upper band of the screen. Press ESC when you are finished defining the label.

When the screen displays one bar, you may use the $\mathbf{\Delta}$ and $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ to display other functions.

## 4.2 $\rightarrow$ Two Bar Graphs

$4.3 \rightarrow$ Scroll

## 5 $\rightarrow$ KEYPAD <br> CONFIGURATION MENU

The $4.2 \rightarrow$ Two Bar Graphs menu is the same as the $4.1 \rightarrow$ One Bar Graph menu; you can, however, make two selections. Figure 37 on page 64 shows the display screen configured for Two Bar Graphs. When the $\boldsymbol{\Delta}$ and $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ keys are used to scroll, the first bar graph remains fixed, while the other parameters are displayed successively on the second bar graph.


Figure 37: Display Screen Configured for Two Bar Graphs

The Scroll format displays 11 functions in three tables (12 functions for ATV56D16 to ATV56D79 drive controllers). See Figure 38.


Figure 38: Display Screen Configured for Four Table Scroll

NOTE: For Motor Thermal State (see first line of third table in Figure 38), if Motor Overload is set to No Thermal Overload in the $7.4 \rightarrow$ Fault Management menu, $n t H$ will be displayed instead of a percentage. Drive Thermal State (second line of third table) appears only for ATV56D16 to ATV56D79 drive controllers.


Use the $5 \rightarrow$ Keypad Configuration menu to configure the drive controller for Terminal Command or to configure a logic input for changing control of the drive controller from Terminal Command to Keypad Command.

In Terminal Command (factory setting), the drive controller takes reference frequency, stop, and run commands from its terminal strip connections.

Keypad Command allows the drive controller to run and receive its reference frequency from the keypad display.

If keypad is removed from drive controller while in keypad command mode, then the controller will stop and may trip on serial link fault.
Command mode can be set in one of two ways:

1. Select TERMINAL COMMAND from the menu. The drive controller will operate in the TERMINAL COMMAND mode.
2. Select TER/KEY by LI from the menu and assign a logic input, LI3 or LI4. This enables switching between command modes by logic input. When the assigned logic input is low (state 0 ), Terminal Command will be active. When the assigned logic input is high (state 1), Keypad Command will be active. To reassign a logic input, follow the instructions on the screen.

NOTE: Keypad Command is only accessible when in Total Lock if TER/KEY by LI has been selected before locking.

Keypad Command allows the drive controller to run independently of its logic and analog inputs. To start the drive controller in Keypad Command, momentarily press the RUN key. The drive controller will start, following the acceleration ramp.

To stop the drive controller, momentarily press the STOP key and the drive controller will stop, following the deceleration ramp. The LI1 input remains active for an override stop in Keypad Command mode.


NOTE: When running the drive controller in Keypad Command mode after having been in Terminal Command mode, the drive controller will run in the same direction in which it was running in Terminal Command mode. The drive controller cannot be commanded to change the direction of the motor once Keypad Command mode is entered. Make sure that the motor is rotating in the desired direction before switching from Terminal Command mode to Keypad Command mode.

## Table 25: Display Mode Screen in Keypad Command Mode

In Keypad Command mode, the $\boldsymbol{\Delta}$ key is used to increase reference frequency and the $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ key is used to decrease reference frequency. Note that pressing the ENT key is not necessary-frequency changes automatically upon pressing the $\mathbf{\Delta}$ or $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ keys. A reference frequency can also be entered by pressing the decimal point key, entering a frequency, and pressing the ENT key.

The assignment of each function key is displayed on the last line of the Display Mode screen above the corresponding function key. Table 26 describes the operation of the function keys in keypad command.

While in Keypad Command mode, 0 Hz reference is treated as a speed. Once the RUN key is pressed, the drive controller is in a "run state." After pressing RUN, you may select any speed reference (including 0 Hz ) and the drive controller will run at that speed. Pressing the STOP key causes the drive controller to ramp to zero output even though the reference remains at a non-zero frequency. Cycling power resets the reference to zero and causes the drive to be in the "stop state."

Table 26: Operation of Function Keys in Keypad Command

| Label | Indication | Action Achieved by Pressing Associated <br> Function Key |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| RST | Reset fault is assigned to associated <br> function key. | Press function key to reset drive controller after a fault. |
| SCR | Scroll function is assigned to <br> associated function key. | Press function key to scroll through display screens. <br> and $\boldsymbol{V}$ keys are used for this function in Terminal <br> Command mode. |

The $6 \rightarrow$ Drive Configuration menu can be accessed only if the drive controller is stopped. If the drive controller is running, a message appears:

```
IMFOSSIELE TO
CONFIGIURE THE IRIUE
WHILE RUNNING
ESC: to retuman to
Main MEvu
```

Press ESC to return to the Main menu.

| G-IRIUE COMFIG. |
| :---: |
| TORDIE: VARIAELE |
| COMHENTI: 2 WIRES |
| MOTOR: 60 Hz 440-4600 |
| Power: $2.2 \mathrm{~kW} / 3 \mathrm{HP}$ |
|  |

The $6 \rightarrow$ Drive Configuration menu contains three selections: Torque Type, Command Type, and Motor. "Motor" is a valid selection for the ATV56U41 drive controller only since this drive controller can be used with a 1,2 , or 3 hp motor. Otherwise, selecting "Motor" calls up a message screen:

| To modify Motor |
| :--- |
| paramiters, please go |
| to meru 7.11 |
| ENT to contimue |

To access Motor Parameters, go to the $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters menu (page 69).

## 6.1 $\rightarrow$ Torque Type

## $6.2 \rightarrow$ Command Type

## 6.3 $\rightarrow$ Motor Power (ATV56U41 only)



Select type of torque according to the application and press ENT. A window will appear showing the current and power rating of the drive controller. Confirm by pressing ENT. Display returns to the $6 \rightarrow$ Drive Configuration menu.

NOTE: Changing Torque Type or Control Type (in the $7.13 \rightarrow$ Control Type menu) resets the motor parameters in the $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters menu to the factory settings.


Select 2-wire or 3-wire command. The selection affects the operation of LI1. Factory setting is 2-wire command. See pages 68 and 68 for detailed descriptions of 2-wire and 3-wire command.


For the ATV56U41 drive controller with a motor rated less than 3 hp (or 4 hp variable torque), the $6.3 \rightarrow$ Motor Power screen can be accessed to select the power of the motor. This screen is only available on the ATV56U41 drive controller.

## 2-Wire Command

The use of 2-wire command will allow the drive controller to restart without operator intervention after fault reset or restoration of power provided that a run command is present. For applications where automatic restarting may pose a hazard to personnel, the use of 2-wire command is not recommended.


Figure 39: Timing Diagram for 2-Wire Command
If 2-wire command is selected, LI1 is Run Enable and must always be high for the drive controller to run. If drive controller is running and LI1 goes low, the drive controller will freewheel stop.

If the drive controller is running and the keypad STOP key is pressed, regardless of whether the drive is in Keypad or Terminal mode, the drive controller will stop, following the normal ramp.

To restart the drive controller, the Run command must be set to low state. Then the drive controller will restart on the next command to run.

For a wiring diagram, refer to Chapter 2.

The use of 3-wire command requires operator intervention after fault reset or restoration of power to restart the drive controller.


Figure 40: Timing Diagram for 3-Wire Command
If 3-wire command is selected, LI1 is Stop, normally-closed. LI1 must be closed for the drive controller to run. The forward input must momentarily transition to active to start the drive controller. If the drive controller is running and LI1 goes low, the drive controller will stop, following the normal ramp. If the drive controller is running and the keypad STOP key is pressed, regardless of whether the drive is in Keypad or Terminal mode, the drive controller will stop, following the normal ramp.

To restart the drive controller, the Run command must be set to low state. Then the drive controller will restart on the next Run command.

Refer to Chapter 2 for wiring diagram.

## 7 $\rightarrow$ GENERAL CONFIGURATION MENU

## 7.1 $\rightarrow$ Drive Parameters

7.11 $\rightarrow$ Motor Parameters

|  |
| :---: |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |
|  |  |

The $7 \rightarrow$ General Configuration menu allows access to four sub-menus:

- 7.1 $\rightarrow$ Drive Parameters
- 7.2 $\rightarrow$ Application Functions (including input assignments)
- 7.3 $\rightarrow$ Output Assignments
- $7.4 \rightarrow$ Fault Management.

These menus can be accessed only if the drive controller is stopped.

| 7.1+IRIUE FHRAMETERS |
| :---: |
| MOTOR PHRHMETERS CONTROL FARAMETERS |
|  |  |
|  |
| * \& ENT to |

The 7.1 $\rightarrow$ Drive Parameters menu allows access to basic motor and control parameters, and control type. The menu is accessible only if the drive controller is stopped and in Terminal Command mode (page 64). To verify adjustments, return to the Display screen by pressing F2, then start the motor. To readjust, stop the motor and return to the desired menu.

The parameter choices available on the sub-menus vary depending on the torque type selected from the $6.1 \rightarrow$ Torque Type menu, and the control type selected from the $7.13 \rightarrow$ Control Type menu. See Table 27.

| 7.11* MOTOR PARTMMETER |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| NDIM, CURRENT: | A |
| NOMINAL FREQ: |  |
| NOMINAL VOLT, | , |
| IPMFINİ: | , |
| *** ENT to modifu |  |
| ROTATION NORM: CIIREENT LIMIT |  |

Use the $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters menu to adjust basic motor parameters. The functions available from this menu vary depending on the type of control selected (page 76). Table 27 shows the functions available from the menu under the various types of control.
Adjustments to motor parameters are made either to sub-menus or directly on the $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters menu itself. To select a parameter, scroll with the $\mathbf{\Delta}$ and $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ keys and press ENT. Adjust the parameter value to the desired setting, then press ENT to confirm.

Some motor parameters are also accessible from the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu. Any adjustments made to these parameters from the $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters menu are also automatically displayed in the Parameter Setting menu.

Table 27 shows the selections available from the $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters menu under the various drive controller configurations.

Table 27: 7.11 $\rightarrow$ Motor Parameters Menu

|  | Variable Torque |
| :---: | :--- |
| Normal <br> Control | Nominal Current <br> Nominal Frequency <br> Nominal Voltage <br> Profile <br> Damping <br> Rotation Normalization <br> Current Limit |
|  | Nominal Current <br> Control |
|  |  |

Nominal Current

Nominal Frequency

Nominal Current is the motor nameplate value for full load current. Adjustable from $45 \%$ to $105 \%$ of the drive controller's current rating, the factory preset value is $90 \%$. Set Nominal Current to equal the motor full load current. The Nominal Current parameter does not affect the maximum current that the drive controller can produce, i.e. Current Limit. However, changing the nominal current parameter can change the value of motor overload current in menu 1. Check and adjust, if necessary, the value of motor overload if nominal current is changed.

| 7.11*MOTOR PARPMETER |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| NOM, CIURENT |  |
| NOTHINAL FRER, | 0 Hz |
| NOMINAL VOLT |  |
| IIEMPIN ${ }^{\text {a }}$ |  |
| $\sim_{*}{ }^{*} 8$ ENT to Mos |  |

Nominal Frequency corresponds to the point on the $\mathrm{V} / \mathrm{Hz}$ curve beyond which voltage remains virtually constant and only frequency increases. Nominal Frequency often corresponds to the base frequency of the motor, which is usually the same as the line frequency of the connected power system. Nominal frequency is fixed at 60 Hz .

| 7.11*MOTOR FARTMETER |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| NOM, CIURRENT |  |
| NOMINFL FREX. |  |
| NOTMINAL UOLT, | 460 |
| IMPl\|PIN ${ }^{\text {d }}$ |  |
| - ${ }^{*}$ \& ENT to modifus |  |

## Profile

Damping

Nominal Voltage corresponds to the point on the $\mathrm{V} / \mathrm{Hz}$ curve beyond which voltage remains virtually constant and only frequency increases. Nominal Voltage is used with Nominal Frequency to determine the V/Hz baseline. Nominal Voltage often corresponds to the base voltage of the motor, which is usually the same as the line voltage of the connected power system. Nominal voltage is fixed at 460 V for 460 V drive controllers. For 230 V drive controllers, Nominal Voltage is set at 230 V upon first power up, but configurable as either 208 or 230 V .

Profile is used only when the drive controller is configured for Normal control type. This parameter shapes the V/Hz profile of the output. Profile can be set to a value between 0 and 100, factory preset to 20 . Enter the Profile value directly onto the $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters menu.

During changes in speed command, the $\mathrm{V} / \mathrm{Hz}$ profile becomes linear, intersecting the Vn and fn points of Figure 41. As a result, there is no reduction in available motor torque during speed changes.


Shaded area denotes zone within which drive functions when Profile is set between 0 and 100.

Figure 41: Profile

Profile is not available when NOLD control type is selected.

Damping is available with any drive controller configuration (page 67). This parameter adjusts the integral gain of the frequency loop to match the inertial response of the load to the frequency response of the drive controller.

The adjustable range varies with the drive controller configuration:

- 1 to $100 \%$ for NOLD control with either variable torque configuration
- 1 to $800 \%$ for Normal control with either variable torque configuration

When Damping is properly adjusted and the drive controller is not in current limit or ramp modification, the motor speed should follow the speed reference ramp without oscillation and with little overshoot. During steady-state operation with constant load, the motor speed should remain constant with no oscillation. If the motor load changes, the drive controller should correct the motor speed disturbance rapidly with little or no oscillation.

The factory preset value of Damping is $20 \%$ which corresponds to 1.5 times the factory set motor inertia for the selected motor power rating. For most applications, no adjustment of Damping should be required.

If the motor speed oscillates or overshoots the desired speed during changes in the motor speed reference or during steady-state operation with constant load, Damping is set too low and should be increased. If the motor speed follows the speed reference ramp sluggishly or tends to vary during steady-state operation with constant load, Damping is set too high and should be decreased.


Rewiring the input terminals L1, L2, and L3 will not change the direction of motor shaft rotation; therefore with the Rotation Normalization parameter, direction of rotation can be inverted from ABC to ACB in order for the motor shaft rotation to agree with the forward and reverse logic inputs. Neither the drive controller nor the motor has to be rewired. Select desired phase rotation and press ENT. Factory setting is ABC , corresponding to $\mathrm{U} / \mathrm{T} 1, \mathrm{~V} / \mathrm{T} 2, \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{T} 3$.

## Current Limit

| CURRENT LIMIT |
| :---: |
| IEFFIULT LIMIT |
| BY FREQ, LEV: Hz |
| BY LOGIC IN: |
|  |
| URR, LIMIT : |

Current Limit can be set to a value between 40 to $110 \%$ of drive controller output current. Default value is $110 \%$ of drive controller output current. Note that the Current Limit value is not affected by the Nominal Current parameter set in the $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters menu.

## A CAUTION

## UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT ACTION

If Current Limit is set to less than the no-load current of the motor, unstable operation of the drive controller may result.
After adjusting Current Limit, operate the drive controller throughout its speed range with expected motor load. Ensure that:

- The motor rotates in the correct direction.
- Rotation occurs even with small ( $2-3 \mathrm{~Hz}$ ) values of speed reference.
- The steady-state motor current does not exceed the motor nameplate current rating.

For critical applications that cannot be rotated in the reverse direction such as pumps equipped with anti-rotation ratchets, uncouple the motor from the load after adjusting Current Limit and check the motor for the proper rotation direction when starting.
Failure to follow this instruction can result in injury or equipment damage.

The value of Current Limit can affect the operation of other drive controller functions. If Current Limit is set to less than the motor no-load current, then unstable operation of the motor may result. After adjusting Current Limit, operate the drive controller throughout its speed range. The motor should always start in the correct direction and should rotate even with low $(2-3 \mathrm{~Hz})$ values of speed reference. The steady-state motor current should not exceed the motor nameplate current rating. For critical loads which cannot be rotated in the reverse direction, always uncouple the motor from the load after adjusting Current Limit and check the motor for the proper direction of rotation.

Set Current Limit to Default Limit, or enter a reduced value and select one of the activation methods:

- Frequency Level: when the drive controller exceeds the programmed frequency level the reduced Current Limit value is activated. To keep the reduced Current Limit value active at all times, set frequency level to 0 .
- Logic Input: assign a logic input to Current Limit (see Figure 44 on page 74 for procedure). When the assigned logic input is low (state 0 ), the Current Limit value is the default setting. When it is high (state 1), the Current Limit is the reduced value.
- Analog Input: assign an analog input to Current Limit (see Figure 43 on page 73 for procedure). The set current limit is ignored and the analog input is scaled so that the adjustment range of current limit is $40 \%$ to $110 \%$ of the drive controller current. This function could be used as a drive current reference for motor torque control.


Figure 42: Current Limit Timing

Reassigning Analog and Logic Inputs


Figure 43: Reassigning Analog Inputs


Figure 44: Reassigning Logic Inputs

### 7.12 $\rightarrow$ Control Parameters

| 7.12+CONTROL FARMM, |
| :---: |
|  |
|  |
| HIGH SPEED : 60.0Hz |
| HCCELERHIION : 3. |
| $\sim_{*}^{*}$ \& ENT to modify |
| DECELERHTION : 3.0 E SKIP FREDUENCY: . . . |
|  |  |

The $7.12 \rightarrow$ Control Parameters menu allows access to basic drive controller parameters. The default or previously programmed values for each parameter appear in the right column of the menu.

Adjustments to control parameters are made either to submenus or directly on the $7.12 \rightarrow$ Control Parameter menu. To select a parameter, scroll with the $\boldsymbol{\Delta}$ and $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ keys and press ENT. Adjust the parameter to desired setting, then press ENT to confirm.

The Control Parameters are discussed in detail in the following pages. Some parameters are also accessible from the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu. Any adjustments made to these parameters from the $7.12 \rightarrow$ Control Parameters menu are also displayed in the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu.

| A CAUTION |
| :--- |
| MACHINERY OVERSPEED |
| - Some motors and/or loads may not be suited for operation above nameplate motor |
| speed and frequency. Consult motor manufacturer before operating motor above |
| rated speed. |
| - Under certain steady-state and transient conditions, the output frequency may |
| reach $120 \%$ of Maximum Frequency setting. Adjust Maximum Frequency |
| parameter accordingly. |
| Failure to follow this instruction can result in injury or equipment damage. |

Maximum Frequency clamps the High Speed setting. Maximum Frequency is fixed at 72 Hz .

Low Speed

High Speed

Acceleration Time

Deceleration Time

Skip Frequencies

Low Speed corresponds to the lower limit of the speed reference at AI1 or AI2 (see Figure 45) and limits the minimum commanded running frequency to a value between 0 and High Speed. It does not affect the starting frequency. If the drive controller is commanded to run below the programmed Low Speed, the output will be limited to the Low Speed value. Factory setting is 0 Hz .


Figure 45: Speed Reference

High Speed corresponds to the upper limit of the speed reference at AI1 or AI2 (see Figure 45) and limits the maximum commanded running frequency to a value between Low Speed and Maximum Frequency. If the drive controller is commanded to run above the programmed High Speed, the output will be limited to the High Speed value. Factory setting is 60 Hz .

Acceleration Time is adjustable between 0.1 and 999.9 seconds and represents the time the drive controller will take to accelerate between 0 Hz and Nominal Frequency, set in the $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters menu (page 70). Acceleration Time determines the base line slope used by the drive controller to accelerate between frequencies. Factory setting is 3 seconds.

If the acceleration slope is too steep for the motor to accelerate the connected load, the acceleration slope will be modified to minimize the possibility of a nuisance trip.

Deceleration Time is adjustable between 0.1 and 999.9 seconds and represents the time the drive controller will take to decelerate between Nominal Frequency, set in the $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters menu (page 70), and 0 Hz . Deceleration Time determines the base line slope used by the drive controller to decelerate between frequencies. Factory setting is 3 seconds.

If the deceleration slope is too steep for the motor to decelerate the connected load, the deceleration slope will be modified to minimize the possibility of a nuisance trip.


Skip Frequencies 1, 2, and 3 are used to avoid mechanical resonance. The adjustable range for skip frequencies is from 0 to 72 Hz . The three skip points may overlap each other. Skip Bands of 2 or 5 Hz can be selected.

If a reference is set in a skip frequency band, the drive controller will not run in that band. Ramps are not modified in the skip frequency bands.


Figure 46: Skip Frequency
$7.13 \rightarrow$ Control Type

Normal

NOLD (No Load)


NOTE: Changing Control Type resets the motor parameters in menu 7.11 to factory settings.

Normal control is the factory setting. Normal is a sensorless flux vector control. In order to create high torque at low speeds, the drive controller maintains a $90^{\circ}$ phase relationship between the rotor and stator electromagnetic fields by continuously calculating the position of the rotor in relation to the electrical position of the stator. It is generally applicable on asynchronous motors and provides good torque performance. When using Normal control, motor horsepower must be equal to or one horsepower size less than drive controller horsepower.

For the NOLD control type, the V/Hz profile is linear, intersecting the Vn and fn points of Figure 36 on page 60 during changes in speed command or changes in motor load. During steady-state operation, the slope of the $\mathrm{V} / \mathrm{Hz}$ line is automatically adjusted to reduce the voltage on the motor, depending on load, at any given speed. If a motor speed change is commanded or the motor load changes, the initial V/Hz profile is immediately reestablished.

The NOLD control type differs from the Normal control type in the following way:

- Motor voltage reduction can occur even at motor nominal frequency for applications where the motor load varies.

Operation with NOLD control type generally results in reduced audible motor noise without reducing motor RPM. In some cases (particularly with motors whose horsepower rating is less than 10 hp ), improved motor efficiency may result. NOLD control should not be used with motors in parallel.


Use the $7.2 \rightarrow$ Application Functions menu to assign functions to the logic inputs and outputs.

The number of functions assignable is limited by the number of inputs/outputs required by a function (see Table 28 on page 77), the number of inputs/outputs on the drive controller available to be reassigned, and by compatibility of the selected functions (see Figure 47 on page 78). The selection of a function which is not compatible with one already selected causes the message illustrated above to appear on the terminal screen.

The drive controller has two logic inputs that can be reassigned. If more inputs/ outputs are required, an I/O Extension module can be ordered. Refer to the catalog (document number VD0C06S201_) for more information.

Table 28: Logic I/O Required by Application Functions

| Application Function | No. of LI Inputs <br> Used ${ }^{[1]}$ | No. of AI Inputs <br> Used | No. of LO or R2 <br> Outputs Used |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Preset Speeds | 1 or 2 | 0 | 0 |
| Speed Reference | 0 | 1 or 2 | 0 |
| Auto/Manual | 1 or 2 | 0 | 0 |
| Controlled Stop | 0 or 1 | 0 | 0 |
| Shutdown | 0 | 0 | 0 or 1 |
| Bypass | 2 | 0 | 1 |
| PI Regulator | 0,1, or 2 | $0,1,2$, or 3 | $0,1,2$, or 3 |

${ }^{[1]}$ The only LI inputs which can be reprogrammed are LI3 and LI4. LI1 is fixed as Run Enable, and LI2 is fixed as Run Forward. If more inputs are required, the I/O Extension Module can be ordered. See catalog (document VD0C06S201_) for more information.

[1] Shutdown is incompatible with Controlled Stop by Frequency Threshold and Controlled Stop by Frequency Threshold/Logic Input.

Figure 47: Application Function Incompatibilities


This function allows you to program up to preset speeds. If one preset speed is required, one logic input must be assigned. Two logic inputs must be assigned if three preset speeds are required.

The preset speeds are adjustable from 0.1 to 72 Hz . The actual running speed is limited to the setting of High Speed. The programmed values must increase consecutively from speeds 1,2 , and 3 . If both logic inputs are low, the speed will be the speed reference, if present, or low speed. The factory preset value for one Preset Speed is 5 Hz , for three Preset Speeds 5,10 , and 15 Hz .

Table 29 gives input states for activation of 3 Preset Speeds. If 1 Preset Speed has been selected, the speed is active when the assigned input is high.

Table 29: Logic Input States for 3 Preset Speeds

|  | Input a | Input b |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Low Speed or Reference | 0 | 0 |
| Preset Speed 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Preset Speed 2 | 0 | 1 |
| Preset Speed 3 | 1 | 1 |

Seven preset speeds can be obtained with the I/O Extension Module. For more information refer to the catalog (document number VD0C06S201_).


Speed Reference allows the assignment of the AI1 and AI2 inputs as Speed Reference 1 or Speed Reference 2 . Speed Reference also allows you to modify the analog current input, AI2, for type of signal. The adjustment range is $0-20 \mathrm{~mA}$, $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}, 20-4 \mathrm{~mA}$, or $\mathrm{x}-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ where x can be programmed from 0 to 20 mA in increments of 0.1 mA . Factory setting for AI2 is $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$. When Speed Reference is set to $x-20 \mathrm{~mA}$, the frequency at which the drive controller will run is determined as follows:

$$
f=(\text { High Speed }- \text { Low Speed })(\text { Input mA § } 20 \mathrm{~mA})+\text { Low Speed }
$$

When the value of AI2 is below xmA , the drive will run at the Low Speed setting.


Figure 48: Speed Reference and Drive Controller Frequency
If the switch on the control board is set to voltage, AI2 will be a $0-5 \mathrm{~V}$ voltage input. Refer to Chapter 2 for location of switch. AI2 in this case must be set on the keypad display for 0-20 mA . The voltage reference input, AI1, cannot be modified. It is fixed as a 0 to 10 VDC input.

The two inputs, AI1 and AI2, are summed as a factory default, limited to High Speed. However, when Auto/Manual is active the inputs function independently and only one is active at a time. It is possible to multiply AI2 by ( -1 ) by selecting Yes. In this case, AI2 is subtracted from AI1. If Clamp Sum is set to Yes (factory setting) and (AI1-AI2) is zero or negative, the drive controller will run at Low Speed. If Clamp Sum is set to No and (AI1-AI2) is negative, the drive controller will change direction. See Notes on page 80.

NOTE: The drive controller cannot be commanded to change the direction of the motor once the Keypad Command mode is entered. If the direction of motor rotation is reversed with speed reference summing, the motor will continue to rotate in this direction if Keypad Command mode is entered. Make sure that the motor is rotating in the desired direction before switching from Terminal Command mode to Keypad Command mode.

NOTE: If 20-4 mA is selected, user should consider effects of broken wire. If broken wire occurs when 20-4 mA is selected, drive controller will run at high speed.

Auto/Manual

|  |
| :---: |
| NO <br> YES, LOGIC IN,:--- <br> FUTO RUN IN, :--... |
| *, * \& ENT to modif ESC: to guit |

Auto/Manual allows switching between Speed Reference 1 and Speed Reference 2 by using a logic input. Speed Reference 1 and Speed Reference 2 can be programmed to AI1 or AI2 in the Speed Reference screen (see page 79). The Auto/ Manual function eliminates the need for mechanical switching of the low level analog inputs, and allows the Speed References to act independently instead of being summed.

Manual command is defined as Speed Reference 1; Automatic command as Speed Reference 2. When assigned input is high, Auto is active. When it is low, Manual is active.

Auto Run Input is optional. If assigned, it allows the use of a second logic input for an additional 2-wire remote control run command, only active when the drive controller is in Auto mode. Local control can be used as either 2-wire or 3-wire control. See Figure 97 on page 163 and Figure 98 on page 164 for interaction of Auto/Manual and Controlled Stop in 2-wire and 3-wire control.


Controlled Stop, which customizes the stopping process, is commanded by:

- Logic Input
- Frequency Threshold
- Frequency Threshold and Logic Input

When Controlled Stop is activated, the drive controller stops according to one of the following methods: Freewheel Stop, Fast Stop, or DC Injection Braking. To enable Controlled Stop, select a command and stop method as explained on the following pages. Command methods are explained on pages 81 to 85 ; stop methods, on pages 82-85. See Figure 97 and Figure 98 in Appendix A for interaction of Auto/Manual and Controlled Stop in 2-wire and 3-wire control.


When Controlled Stop by Logic Input is selected, the activation of the assigned logic input causes the drive controller to stop, following the selected controlled stop method (Freewheel Stop, Fast Stop, or DC Injection Braking). The controlled stop logic input is only active in Terminal Command mode and is disabled in the Keypad Command mode.

To enable Controlled Stop by Logic Input, assign a logic input, define its active state as logic low (0) or logic high (1), and choose the stop method.

| CONT, STOP BY FREQ.L. |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| FRED. LEVEL | : 1 Hz |
| STOP TYPE | : FAST |
| Enter all valuest ESC |  |

With Controlled Stop by Frequency Threshold enabled, if a Stop command is initiated, the drive controller follows the active deceleration ramp until the programmed Frequency Threshold is reached. At this point, the drive controller automatically begins the programmed controlled stop method. Controlled Stop by Frequency Threshold is active in both Terminal Command and Keypad Command modes.

To enable Controlled Stop by Frequency Threshold, set Frequency Threshold and select a stopping method (Freewheel Stop, Fast Stop, or DC Injection Braking).

| CONT.STOP LI/FRED.L. |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| LOTIC INFIT | : ----- |
| ACTIUE STATE | : LOW |
| STOP TYPE | : FAST |
| FRED. LEVEL | ${ }^{6} \mathrm{~Hz}$ |
| STOF TYPE | : IIC: |

To enable Controlled Stop by Frequency Threshold/Logic Input, assign a logic input and define its active state. Set the Frequency Threshold and select stopping methods for both commands

If both Logic Input and Frequency Threshold commands are selected and active, the stop type for the Logic Input command has priority; however, both commands can be used in the same stopping sequence.

By Frequency Threshold / Logic Input

Controlled Stop Command Methods (continued)

When Frequency Threshold/Logic Input is selected and the drive controller is in Terminal Command mode, controlled stopping is active both at the frequency threshold and with the logic input. When the drive controller is in Keypad Command mode, controlled stopping by frequency threshold is active, but controlled stopping by logic input is disabled.

At the first command to stop, the drive controller stops following the selected controlled stop method (Freewheel Stop, Fast Stop, or DC Injection Braking). If the other command to stop is given, the drive controller will only stop following the controlled stop method corresponding to the second command if the method has priority as compared to the first method. The order of priority is: Freewheel Stop, Fast Stop, DC Injection Braking.


Figure 49: Freewheel Stop Timing Diagram (2-Wire Command)


Figure 50: Freewheel Stop Timing Diagram (3-Wire Command)

With Freewheel Stop, the drive controller output is turned off and the motor coasts to a stop. Figure 49 and Figure 50 illustrate the timing sequence for Freewheel Stop.

Fast Stop

## A WARNING

## EXTENDED STOPPING TIME

Deceleration time during fast stop may be automatically extended depending on braking ability of drive controller. A dynamic brake or mechanical stopping/holding brake may be required for consistent stopping times independent of motor load conditions. Fast Stop does not function during loss of power or drive controller fault.
Failure to follow this instruction can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Controlled Stop Command Methods (continued)


Figure 51: Fast Stop Timing Diagram (2-Wire Command)


Figure 52: Fast Stop Timing Diagram (3-Wire Command)
With fast stop, the drive controller decelerates as quickly as possible without causing a nuisance trip. Figure 51 and Figure 52 illustrate timing sequence for Fast Stop.

| A W/ARN/NG |
| :--- |
| NO HOLDING TORQUE |
| - DC injection braking does not provide holding torque at zero speed. |
| - DC injection braking does not function during loss of power or drive controller fault. |
| - When required, use separate brake function for holding torque. |
| Failure to follow this instruction can result in death, serious injury, or equipment |
| damage. |

## A CAUTION

## MOTOR OVERHEATING AND DAMAGE

Application of DC injection braking for long periods of time can cause motor overheating and damage. Protect motor from extended periods of DC injection braking.
Failure to follow this instruction can result in injury or equipment damage.

With DC Injection Braking, DC current is injected in the stator creating a stationary magnetic pole which brakes the rotor. This method of braking produces maximum torque at low frequencies.

Controlled Stop Command Methods (continued)

Two adjustable parameters, DC Injection Level and DC Brake Time, control the operation of DC Injection Braking. DC Injection Level sets the current level used for injection braking. The level is programmable between 50 and $110 \%$ of nominal drive controller current. Factory setting is 70\%. Actual braking torque depends on the motor characteristics. DC Brake Time can be set between 0 and 30 seconds, preset at 2 seconds. If 30.1 seconds is selected, the drive controller brakes for 30 seconds at the adjusted level and then continuously at $50 \%$ of rated current.


Figure 53: DC Injection Timing Sequence (2-Wire Command)


Figure 54: DC Injection Timing Sequence (3-Wire Command)

## Shutdown

Shutdown allows the drive controller to dwell at Low Speed for a time period adjustable from 0.1 to 60 seconds before completely stopping. This function is useful in applications such as pumping stations where the dwell time controls the closing of a check valve before the pump is stopped.

To use Shutdown, activate the function by selecting Yes and set dwell time to a value between 0.1 and 60 seconds. The timer begins when the drive controller deceleration ramp reaches Low Speed. Factory setting of dwell time is 1 second.

If the application requires it, a logic output can be assigned to the Shutdown function. When dwell time has expired, the drive controller activates the logic output to indicate end of functioning at Low Speed.

Note that if a Run command is issued during the dwell time, it is not taken into account until the end of the dwell time.


Figure 55: Shutdown Timing Diagram (2-Wire Command)

## Bypass



NOTE: Do not set Bypass
function if the drive controller
is part of a Class 8839
ALTIVAR 56 combination
device.

Bypass is used to sequence an output isolation contactor. The output isolation contactor is commonly used in conjunction with a bypass contactor. The bypass contactor and associated power circuit components permit starting, running and stopping of the motor directly from line power. Bypass operation requires the wiring scheme illustrated in Figure 58 on page 87.

To use Bypass, assign a logic input (LI3 for example) to Sequence Input and relay output R2 to Run Output Command. Set time values for Delay Time and Sequence Tof (Time Out Fault). If desired, logic input LI4 can be assigned to Process Input and a time value for Process Tof (Time-out Fault) can be set to verify an optional user-defined event. These parameters are described in Table 56.

Figure 56: Bypass Parameters

| Parameter | Description | Range | Default |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Delay Time | Programmable delay time to allow for decay of residual <br> motor voltage before restarting the drive controller after <br> operating directly from line power. | $0.2-10 \mathrm{~s}$ | 2 s |
| Run Output <br> Command | This output is active if the drive controller receives a Run <br> command and Delay Time has expired. Assign relay R2 to <br> Run Output Command. | - | - |
| Sequence Input | Used to initiate the acceleration ramp. If this input does not <br> go high within the time for which Sequence Time-out Fault <br> is set, the drive controller will not start and displays a <br> Sequence Time-out Fault. If the Sequence Input goes low <br> while the drive controller is operating, the drive controller <br> will fault and freewheel stop. | - | - |
| Sequence Time-out | The time period after a run command is received during <br> which the Sequence Input must go high to prevent a <br> sequence time-out fault. | $0.2-300 \mathrm{~s}$ | 5 s |
| Fault | Verifies the occurrence of a user-defined event after the <br> acceleration ramp has begun. If this input does not go high <br> within the time for which the Process Time-out Fault is set, <br> the drive controller will trip on Process Time-out Fault. | - | - |
| Process Input | The time period after the acceleration ramp has begun <br> during which the Process Input must go high to prevent a <br> Process Time-out fault. | $0.2-300 \mathrm{~s}$ | 60 s |
| Process Time-out |  |  |  |
| Fault |  |  |  |

Example Bypass Circuit
Description

The bypass scheme shown in Figure 58 on page 87 is an example of integrating electromechanical devices with the Bypass function and agrees with the operation described in Table 56 and Figure 57. Depending upon the application, modifications to this circuit may be required to achieve the desired performance. Command Type must be set in the $6 \rightarrow$ Drive Configuration to " 2 -wire" for our example circuit to operate correctly.

NOTE: When using the Bypass function, an external overload relay should be present for motor overload protection. The overload relay is required for protection of the motor against overload/phase loss when operating from either the line (BYP) or drive controller (AS).

Selector switch SW controls the circuit.

- With the switch in the AS (Adjustable Speed) position, the motor is run from the drive controller.
- With the switch in the OFF position, no power is applied to the motor.
- With the switch in the BYP (Bypass) position, the motor is run directly from the input line.
The operation at each transition of SW is as follows:

1. OFF to AS: SW contact C closes, causing LI2 (Run Forward) to go high which starts the Delay Time. If the motor had previously been running in Bypass, then the delay time allows the residual motor voltage to decay. After the Delay Time, the R2 relay (Run Output Command) closes, energizing the I (Isolation) contactor, allowing power to the motor. The I contactor interlock connected to LI 3 (Sequence Input) allows the drive controller to start accelerating. The I contactor interlock must close within the Sequence ToF time or a Sequence Time-out Fault will occur. If the pressure switch contactor connected to LI4 (Process Input) does not close within the Process ToF time, a Process Time-out Fault will occur.
2. AS to OFF: SW contact $C$ opens, causing LI2 to go low and the drive controller to decelerate and stop the motor. Then R2 (Run Output Command) opens, deenergizing the I contactor.
3. OFF to BYP: SW contact A closes, energizing the B (Bypass) contactor. Motor overload protection is provided by OL (thermal overload relay) during running in Bypass. SW contact B opens, disabling the I contactor control circuit. SW contact D opens. Since LI3 (Sequence Input) goes low as a result, the drive controller cannot start. If the drive controller was still in the process of decelerating the motor when previously in " $\mathrm{AS}^{\prime}$ ", the drive controller will initiate a Sequence Time-out Fault, signalling that an incorrect SW sequence has occurred. If incorrect SW sequence indication is not desired, the Controlled Stop function can be used along with the Bypass function. To use Controlled Stop, SW contact D must be connected directly into the LI assigned to Controlled Stop and the I contactor interlock is wired to +24 . Use of the Controlled Stop function along with the Bypass function requires the addition of an I/O Extension module if a Process Input is used.
4. BYP to OFF: SW contact A opens, de-energizing I contactor. The motor stops.


Figure 57: Bypass Timing Diagram


Figure 58: Bypass Circuit Diagram


NOTE: Note: The drive controller has the capability to run in reverse when the PI Regulator function is used. For fan and pump applications in which reverse operation is not permissible, select NO for NEG. VALUES under the PI Parameters screen (Table 36 on page 95).

PI Regulator makes it possible to control a process by adjusting motor speed using a setpoint input and a feedback input. For example, PI Regulator can be used to control the flow or pressure in a pumping system or the liquid level in a reservoir. PI Regulator requires, at minimum, two analog input ports. Additional analog and logic input ports are required for other optional PI Regulator functions. Table 30 describes the items available from the PI Regulator menu. See Figure 59 on page 88 for a block diagram of the PI Regulator function. The menus in this section show factory settings.

Table 30: PI Regulator Menu Items

| Menu Item | Description |
| :--- | :--- |
| NO | PI Regulator function is off. |
| YES, SET POINT | PI Regulator function is on. Selecting this brings up the SET POINT <br> configuration menu. The settings under SET POINT must be <br> defined for PI Regulator to operate. See page 89. |
| FEED BACK | Feedback configuration menu. The settings under FEED BACK <br> must be defined for PI Regulator to operate. See page 90. |
| SET POINT MANUAL | Manual speed reference/automatic setpoint configuration menu. <br> The settings under SET POINT MANUAL may be configured to <br> allow switching between an automatic setpoint reference and a <br> manual speed reference. See page 94. |
| PI PARAMETERS | Miscellaneous PI Regulator configuration parameters menu. The <br> settings under PI PARAMETERS may be configured to fine tune the <br> operation of PI Regulator, or to provide analog and logic reference <br> and status outputs. See page 95. |



Figure 59: PI Regulator Block Diagram

PI Regulator function can only be used when the drive controller is configured for 2-wire control. Table 31 lists the functions which are incompatible with the PI Regulator function.

Table 31: Functions Incompatible with PI Regulator

| Function | Menu Number |
| :--- | :---: |
| Keypad Configuration Menu | 5 |
| Command Type: 3-wire | 6.2 |
| Preset Speeds | 7.2 |
| Speed Reference | 7.2 |
| Auto/Manual | 7.2 |
| Shutdown | 7.2 |
| Tach. Feedback | 7.2 |

NOTE: Tach. Feedback (shaded) is only available when an I/O Extension module is present.
To activate the PI Regulator function, choose "YES, SET POINT" from the PI Regulator menu. The SET POINT menu appears.


Table 32: SETPOINT Menu Items

| Menu Item | Description | Range |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| KEYPAD | Selects the keypad as the means for entering the setpoint. <br> Enter the setpoint with PI SET POINT in the 1 $\rightarrow$ Parameter <br> Setting menu. | - |
| SP INPUT | Selects an analog input port as the means for entering the <br> setpoint. | Al1, AI2, AI3, <br> Al4 |
| SP GAIN | Setpoint scaling adjustment. Range corresponds to \%. For <br> example: $9999=99.99 \%$. | -9999 to +9999 |
| OFFSET | Setpoint offset adjustment. Range corresponds to \%. For <br> example: $9999=99.99 \%$. | -9999 to +9999 |

First, select the means for setpoint entry. Choose KEYPAD for entering the setpoint through the keypad, or SP INPUT for entering the setpoint through an analog input port.

If KEYPAD is chosen for setpoint entry, enter the setpoint value in PI SET POINT under the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu. The setpoint value ranges from 0 to 9999 and is a percentage of the setpoint range (where 9999 represents $99.99 \%$ ). 0 is setpoint minimum, 9999 is setpoint maximum, and 5000 is the middle ( $50 \%$ ) of the setpoint range. Calculate the PI SET POINT value percentage as follows:

$$
\text { PI SET POINT }=\left(\frac{\text { Setpoint }- \text { Min. Process Level }}{\text { Max. Process Level }- \text { Min. Process Level }}\right) \times 9999
$$

If setpoint is to be entered through an analog input port, chose the analog input port based on the type of setpoint signal used (see Table 33).

Table 33: Analog Input Port Ranges

| Analog Input Port | Input Range |
| :--- | :--- |
| AI1 | 0 to 10 V |
| AI2 | 0 to $20 \mathrm{~mA} ; 4$ to 20 mA |
| AI3 | -10 V to $10 \mathrm{~V}{ }^{[1]}$ |
| AI4 | 0 to $20 \mathrm{~mA} ; 4$ to 20 mA |
| ${ }^{[1]}$ AI3 acts as an absolute value when used for PI Regulator. |  |

NOTE: The analog inputs (shaded) are available only when an I/O extension module is present.

Next, calculate the system gain and offset values. System gain and offset are determined by the setpoint minimum and maximum process values and the feedback minimum and maximum process values. Use the following formulas to calculate system gain and offset, and then enter the values into the drive controller with the SP GAIN and OFFSET entries on the SET POINT menu.

$$
\text { SP GAIN }=\left(\frac{\text { Setpoint Max. }- \text { Setpoint Min. }}{\text { Feedback Max. }- \text { Feedback Min. }}\right) \times 9999
$$

$$
\text { OFFSET }=\left(\frac{\text { Setpoint Min. }- \text { Feedback Min. }}{\text { Feedback Max. }- \text { Feedback Min. }}\right) \times 9999
$$

| Setpoint Min. | Process value corresponding to the minimum setpoint signal. Setpoint Min. <br> may either be the maximum process level or the minimum process level, <br> depending on the type of application. Controller will run at low speed at <br> setpoint minimum. |
| :---: | :--- |
| Setpoint Max. | Process value corresponding to the maximum setpoint signal. Setpoint <br> Max. may either be the maximum process level or the minimum process <br> level, depending on the type of application. Controller will run at high speed <br> at setpoint maximum. |
| Feedback Min. | Process value at which feedback is minimum. |
| Feedback Max. | Process value at which feedback is maximum. |
| 9999 | Process resolution factor. 9999 corresponds to $99.99 \%$. |

Feedback


Table 34: Feedback Menu Items

| Menu Item | Description | Range |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| FB INPUT | Selects an analog input port for receiving the <br> feedback signal. | Al1,AI2,AI3,AI4 |
| MIN FEED BACK | Minimum process value for the process <br> feedback sensor. | -9999 to 9999 |
| MAX FEED BACK | Maximum process value for the process <br> feedback sensor. | -9999 to 9999 |
| LOW LEVEL ALM | Process value below which the FB LOW <br> ALARM logic output activates. | -9999 to 9999 |
| HIGH LEVEL ALM | Process value above which the FB HIGH <br> ALARM logic output activates. | -9999 to 9999 |

NOTE: LOW LEVEL ALM must be set greater than MIN FEED BACK and HIGH LEVEL ALM must be set less than MAX FEED BACK.

Select an analog input port for receiving the process feedback signal based on the type of signal used. See Table 33 on page 90 for specifications of analog input ports. Enter the minimum process value for the process feedback sensor in MIN FEED BACK and enter the maximum process value for the process feedback sensor in MAX FEED BACK.

LOW LEVEL ALM may be configured in conjunction with FB LOW ALARM to annunciate when the process is below an acceptable level. Enter a process value between -9999 and 9999 corresponding to the level in which the feedback low alarm (FB LOW ALARM) should turn on. Configure the logic output which will annunciate the fault minimum with FB LOW ALARM in the PI Parameters menu (see page 95).

HIGH LEVEL ALM may be configured in conjunction with FB HIGH ALARM to annunciate when the process is above an acceptable level. Enter a process value between -9999 and 9999 corresponding to the level in which the feedback high alarm (FB HIGH ALARM) should turn on. Configure the logic output which will annunciate the fault maximum with FB HIGH ALARM in the PI Parameters menu (see page 95 ).

PI Regulator Application Examples

Example 1

The drive controller will be used to regulate the level of water in a wet well. The pump will be pumping water out of the wet well to maintain the level between 8 feet and 17 feet. The feedback signal is 0 to 20 mA . At 5 feet the feedback signal is 0 mA , and at 20 feet the feedback signal is 20 mA . A 0 to 10 V signal is used for the setpoint. At 0 V the wet well level is 8 feet, and at 10 V the wet well level is 17 feet.

1. Select YES, SET POINT in the PI Regulator menu.
2. Select SP INPUT.
3. Select AI1 for setpoint input.
4. Calculate SP GAIN and OFFSET and enter the values.

| Setpoint Signal Input on AI1 | Corresponding Process Value |
| :--- | :--- |
| 0 V | 8 feet. Setpoint Min. <br> Process value at low speed. |
| 10 V | 17 feet. Setpoint Max. <br> Process value at high speed. |
|  |  |
| Feedback Signal Input on AI2 | Corresponding Process Value |
| 0 mA | 5 feet. Feedback Min. <br> Process value at minimum feedback. |
| 20 mA | 20 feet. Feedback Max. <br> Process value at maximum feedback. |

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { SP GAIN }=\left(\frac{17-8}{20-5}\right) \times 9999=6000 \\
& \text { OFFSET }=\left(\frac{8-5}{20-5}\right) \times 9999=2000
\end{aligned}
$$

5. Select FEED BACK in the PI Regulator screen.
6. Select FB INPUT.
7. Select AI2 for feedback input.
8. Select MIN FEED BACK.
9. Enter 5 for the minimum process level.
10. Select MAX FEED BACK.
11. Enter 20 for the maximum process level.
12. If desired, enter optional LOW LEVEL ALM and HIGH LEVEL ALM values.
13. Select YES for REV. ACTION in PI PARAMETERS menu.
14. Adjust KP and KI to achieve the best system response.

Example 2

Example 3

This example is the same as Example 1, except it uses the keypad as the means for setpoint entry. The desired setpoint is 12.5 feet.

1. Select YES, SET POINT in the PI Regulator menu.
2. Select KEYPAD as means for setpoint entry.
3. Calculate SP GAIN and OFFSET as illustrated in Example 1 and enter the value.
4. Select FEED BACK in the PI Regulator screen.
5. Select FB INPUT.
6. Select AI2 for feedback input.
7. Select MIN FEED BACK.
8. Enter 8 for the minimum process level.
9. Select MAX FEED BACK.
10. Enter 17 for the maximum process level.
11. If desired, enter optional LOW LEVEL ALM and HIGH LEVEL ALM values.
12. Calculate PI SET POINT and enter the value in the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu.

$$
\text { PI SET POINT }=\left(\frac{12.5-8}{17-8}\right) \times 9999=5000
$$

13. Select YES for REV. ACTION in PI PARAMETERS menu.
14. Adjust KP and KI to achieve the best system response.

In this example, the drive controller will be used to regulate the volume of water in a vat. The pump will be pumping water into the vat to maintain the level between $100 \mathrm{~m}^{3}$ and $10 \mathrm{~m}^{3}$. The feedback signal is 0 to 20 mA . At $5 \mathrm{~m}^{3}$ the feedback signal is 0 mA , and at $100 \mathrm{~m}^{3}$ the feedback signal is 20 mA . A 0 to 10 V signal is used for the setpoint. At 0 V the process level is $100 \mathrm{~m}^{3}$, and at 10 V the process level is $10 \mathrm{~m}^{3}$.

1. Select YES, SET POINT in the PI Regulator menu.
2. Select SP INPUT.
3. Select AI1 for setpoint input.
4. Calculate SP GAIN and OFFSET and enter the values.

| Setpoint Signal Input on AI1 | Corresponding Process Value |
| :--- | :--- |
| 0 V | $100 \mathrm{~m}^{3}$. Setpoint Min. <br> Process value at low speed. |
| 10 V | $10 \mathrm{~m}^{3}$. Setpoint Max. <br> Process value at high speed. |
| Feedback Signal Input on Al2 | Corresponding Process Value |
| 0 mA | $5 \mathrm{~m}^{3}$. Feedback Min. <br> Process value at minimum feedback. |
| 20 mA | $10 \mathrm{~m}^{3}$. Feedback Max. <br> Process value at maximum feedback. |
|  |  |
| SP GAIN $=\left(\frac{10-100}{200-5}\right) \times 9999=-4615$ |  |

5. Select FEED BACK in the PI Regulator screen.
6. Select FB INPUT.
7. Select AI2 for feedback input.
8. Select MIN FEED BACK.
9. Enter 10 for the minimum process level.
10. Select MAX FEED BACK.
11. Enter 100 for the maximum process level.
12. If desired, enter optional LOW LEVEL ALM and HIGH LEVEL ALM values.
13. Adjust KP and KI to achieve the best system response.

This example is the same as Example 3 except it uses the keypad as the means for setpoint entry. The desired setpoint point is $55 \mathrm{~m}^{3}$.

1. Select YES, SET POINT in the PI Regulator menu.
2. Select KEYPAD as means for setpoint entry.
3. Calculate SP GAIN and OFFSET as in Example 3 and enter the value.
4. Select FEED BACK in the PI Regulator screen.
5. Select FB INPUT.
6. Select AI2 for feedback input.
7. Select MIN FEED BACK.
8. Enter 10 for the minimum process level.
9. Select MAX FEED BACK.
10. Enter 100 for the maximum process level.
11. If desired, enter optional LOW LEVEL ALM and HIGH LEVEL ALM values.
12. Calculate PI SET POINT and enter the value in the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu.

$$
\text { PI SET POINT }=\left(\frac{55-10}{100-10}\right) \times 9999=5000
$$

13. Adjust KP and KI to achieve the best system response.

## Setpoint Manual



Table 35: SETPOINT MANUAL Menu Items

| Menu Item | Description | Range |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| KEYPAD | Selects the keypad as the means for entering the manual <br> speed reference. Enter speed reference with PI SP MANUAL <br> in the 1 $\rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu when KEYPAD is selected. | - |
| SPM INPUT | Analog input port used for manual speed reference entry. | Al1,AI2,AI3,AI4 |
| AUTO/MANU | Logic input for switching between automatic setpoint and <br> manual speed reference. When the logic input is high, Manual <br> is selected. When the logic input is low, Auto is selected. | LI3 to LI8 |
| REV. SPEED | Logic input for switching between forward and reverse speed. <br> When the logic input is high, the speed reference will be <br> reversed. When the logic input is low, the speed reference will <br> not be reversed. | LI3 to LI8 |

Setpoint Manual provides the capability to manually control the controller speed. This function is useful for slowly bringing the system up to the desired setpoint, and then switching the setpoint to automatic control.

If KEYPAD is chosen as the means for manual speed reference entry, enter the speed reference value in the PI SP MANUAL menu item in the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu. The PI SP MANUAL range, expressed as Hz , is from low speed to high speed.

SPM INPUT is the analog input port which will receive the manual setpoint signal. Select the SPM INPUT based on the type of signal used. See Table 33 on page 90 for specifications on the analog input ports.
AUTO/MANU configures the logic input port which controls whether the manual speed reference or the automatic setpoint is used for setpoint entry. If the logic input is low, the automatic setpoint will be used. If the logic input is high, the manual speed reference will be used.

REVERSE SPEED configures the logic input port which controls the direction in which the drive controller runs in manual. If the logic input is high, the drive controller will run in the reverse direction from the direction commanded by the manual speed reference.

PI Parameters

| FI F'ARPM'METERS |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| KP |  | : 100\%/4 |
| KI | I | : 0 |
|  | EG Villues | : NO |
|  | EV, HCTION | : NO |
|  | , * \& ENT to | elect |
|  | I FLT RHTIO | : 100]/4 |
|  | I REF DIUTPIT | - |
|  | I FB OUTPUT | : |
|  | I ERR DIUTFUT | : |
|  | I INTEGRETOR | : |
|  | B LIMIT | : |
|  | B HIGH MLARM | - |
|  | B LOW ALARM | : |

Table 36 describes the various PI adjustment parameters available with PI Regulator.

Table 36: PI Parameters Menu Items

| Menu Item | Description | Range |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| KP | Proportional gain. Adjusts the speed of the reaction to the feedback loop. Range corresponds to \%. 9999 corresponds to 99.99\%. | 0 to 9999\% |
| KI | Integral gain. Adjusts the accuracy of PI regulation. Range corresponds to per second units. | 0 to 9999 |
| NEG. VALUES | Determines if the drive controller will be able to run in both directions or in only one direction. <br> Yes: The controller can run in both directions. <br> No: The controller can run in only one direction. | Yes, No |
| REV. ACTION | Determines the response to error ( $\Sigma$ ) between setpoint and feedback signals. | Yes, No |
| PI FLT RATIO | User defined error limit between desired setpoint and actual process feedback. Expressed as a percentage of [MAX FEED BACK - MIN FEED BACK]. If the real error exceeds the PI FLT RATIO, the FB LIMIT logic output activates. | 0-100\% |
| PI REF OUTPUT | Analog output reference proportional to PI setpoint. | AO1,AO2,AO3 |
| PI FB OUTPUT | Analog output reference proportional to feedback | AO1,AO2,AO3 |
| PI ERR OUTPUT | Analog output reference proportional to PI error. PI error is the percentage difference between desired setpoint and actual feedback compared to the feedback range. The analog output is scaled such that 0 (or 4 mA ) is proportional to $-5 \%$, and 20 mA is proportional to $5 \%$. | AO1,AO2,AO3 |
| PI INTEGRATOR | Analog output reference proportional to PI integral error. | AO1,AO2,AO3 |
| FB LIMIT | Logic output indicating that PI FLT RATIO has been exceeded. See description of PI FLT RATIO. | LO1 to LO4 RO1 to RO4 |
| FB HIGH ALARM | Logic output indicating that HIGH LEVEL ALM has been exceeded. See description of HIGH LEVEL ALM on page 91. | LO1 to LO4 RO1 to RO4 |
| FB LOW ALARM | Logic output indicating that the feedback is less than LOW LEVEL ALM. See description of LOW LEVEL ALM on page 91. | LO1 to LO4 RO1 to RO4 |

PI Regulator Settings
Configurable from the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting Menu

The following PI Regulator Settings are also configurable in the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu. (PI SET POINT and PI SP MANUAL are only configurable in the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu.) See descriptions of these settings in the "Using PI Regulator" on pages 89 to 90 .

- SP GAIN
- OFFSET
- KP
- KI
- PI FLT RATIO
- PI SET POINT (present in the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu only when KEYPAD is chosen for setpoint entry.)
- PI SP MANUAL (present in the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu only when KEYPAD is chosen for manual speed reference entry.)


The Output Assignment menu allows:

- Display of the logic and analog output assignments
- Assignment of functions to available outputs (i.e., outputs not previously assigned from the $7 \rightarrow$ General Configuration menu)


Ready State

Running State

At Speed

Auto/Manual

Current Limit

Fault State

Drive Thermal Alarm

Loss of Follower

This menu displays all functions that can be assigned to the logic outputs and allows reassignment where possible. Only the outputs not previously assigned from the $7.2 \rightarrow$ Application Function menu can be reassigned here. An arrow indicates a function that is already assigned. Output functions can be assigned to more than one output.

The R1 relay is assigned to the Fault State function and cannot be reassigned. Also, the Drive Thermal Alarm function is only available on drive controllers ATV56D16 to ATV56D79. The menus illustrated above show the procedure for reassigning the logic outputs. The logic output functions are described in the following sections.

If drive controller is waiting for a Run command and is not in fault state, logic output is high or relay is energized.

When a Run command is present, DC injection is not enabled, and there is no fault on the drive controller, logic output is high or relay is energized. If Bypass is enabled, the Sequence Input must also be present for Running State to be high or energized.


Figure 60: At Speed

When drive controller is commanded to run above zero speed and Output Frequency is equal to Frequency Reference input signal, logic output is high or relay is energized.

When drive controller is in Keypad Command, logic output is high or relay is energized. When in Terminal Command, logic output is low or relay is not energized.

When drive controller is in Auto mode of operation, logic output is high or relay is energized. When in Manual mode of operation, logic output is low or relay is not energized.

When drive controller reaches current limit value (depending on setting in $7.11 \rightarrow$ Motor Parameters), logic output is high or relay is energized.

If drive controller is in fault state, logic output is high or relay is energized. The R1 relay, already assigned to Fault State, deenergizes upon fault.

When the drive controller has reached the thermal alarm, activated a minimum of 60 seconds before a drive controller thermal fault is reached, logic output is high or relay is energized. Available only on drive controllers ATV56D16 to ATV56D79.

If current reference at AI2 falls below 3 mA , logic output is high or relay is energized. Can be used only if AI2 is set for $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ or $20-4 \mathrm{~mA}$.

Frequency Level

## Current Level

Thermal Level

FB Limit, FB High Alarm, FB Low Alarm


Figure 61: Frequency Level

When output frequency exceeds the programmed frequency level, logic output is high or relay is energized and remains high (or energized) until output frequency falls below the programmed frequency level. Frequency level is adjustable from 0 to 72 Hz .

To indicate with a low logic level, assign a relay output and wire to the correct contacts.


Figure 62: Current Level

When drive controller exceeds programmed current level (adjustable from10 to $110 \%$ of nominal drive controller current) logic output is high or relay is energized and remains high (or energized) until drive controller falls below the programmed current level.

When thermal motor overload value reaches programmed thermal level (adjustable from 0 to $200 \%$ of nominal motor thermal state) logic output is high or relay is energized and remains high (or energized) until thermal motor overload value falls below thermal level.

FB Limit, FB High Alarm, and FB Low Alarm are described in Table 36 on page 95.

Analog Output Functions

## Motor Current

Motor Speed

Motor Thermal State

Motor Power

Motor Voltage

PI Ref Output, PI FB Output, PI ERR Output, PI Integral


The Analog Output Functions menu displays all functions that can be assigned to the analog outputs and allows reassignment where possible. Only the outputs not previously assigned from the $7 \rightarrow$ General Configuration menu can be reassigned here. Arrows indicate previously assigned functions, i.e., functions assigned either by factory default or reassignment.

The menu illustrated above shows the procedure for reassigning the analog outputs. Note that you may change the output signal scaling factor (factory default $0-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ ) from the Analog Output Functions menu.

20 mA equals $200 \%$ of the motor nominal current rating.
20 mA equals High Speed. 0 mA or 4 mA equals 0 speed. Slip compensation does not act on this output.

20 mA equals $200 \%$ of the nominal motor thermal state.

20 mA equals $200 \%$ of the motor nameplate power in variable torque, low noise configuration.

20 mA equals $110 \%$ of the nominal motor voltage.
PI Ref Output, PI FB Output, PI ERR Output, and PI Integral are described in Table 36 on page 95.

## 7.4 $\rightarrow$ Fault Management

Fault Stop

Drive Controller Restart Methods


The $7.4 \rightarrow$ Fault Management menu allows you to program the drive controller for detecting certain fault states and to specify fault stop methods.

NOTE: The user must evaluate the effects of a drive controller fault on the process being controlled and select an appropriate fault management strategy. If a drive controller fault occurs, applications such as those involving safety-critical aspects of a process (continuity of service under unusual service conditions, emergency braking, etc.) may require additional apparatus or control to achieve an appropriate response or level of redundancy.

Fault Stop determines how the drive controller will stop upon occurrence of a fault. On the ALTIVAR 56 freewheel stop is the fixed method of fault stop. (See Table 37 on page 101.) In freewheel stop, the drive controller output is turned off, allowing the motor to coast to a stop according to inertia and resistant torque.

There are three methods for resetting the drive controller after a fault:

- Automatic restart (2-wire command only). See page 102.
- Manual reset: removal of all power for longer than 1.0 second, then reapplication of power.
- If input phase failure detection is enabled, an input phase failure lasting longer than 1.0 second may also initiate a manual reset.
- Fault reset by logic input or function key (see page 108).

In all cases, fault reset cannot occur unless the cause of the fault is no longer present. Certain faults, described in Table 37, do not allow an automatic restart.

Table 37: Fault Stop and Restart Methods

|  | Resettable Only By Manual Reset (Removal Of Power) | Fault Reset by LI, Function Key, or Manual Reset | Can be Automatically Reset | NonLatching Faults ${ }^{[1]}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Short circuit <br> Ground fault <br> Precharge failure <br> Internal fault <br> Memory failure <br> Dynamic brake fault <br> Dynamic brake resistor fault <br> Auto-test failure <br> Transistor short circuit <br> Open transistor <br> Link Fault | AC line overvoltage <br> DC bus overvoltage <br> Sequence time-out fault Overspeed <br> Output phase loss <br> Drive overtemperature <br> Motor overload <br> Loss of follower <br> Process time-out fault <br> Serial link fault | AC line overvoltage DC bus overvoltage Sequence time-out fault Overspeed Output phase loss Drive overtemperature Motor overload Loss of follower Process time-out fault | Undervoltage input phase failure |
| ${ }^{[1]}$ When the fault condition is no longer present, the drive controller will automatically restart the motor if the Command Type is set for 2-wire and the Run Enable and direction inputs are maintained, regardless of the setting of Automatic Restart. |  |  |  |  |

The following sections describe the faults programmable from the $7.4 \rightarrow$ Fault Management menu.


During loss of input power, certain actions are taken by the drive controller to enable recovery once power is restored. This is possible since the drive controller logic remains active for a least one second after power is lost. The actions taken depend on the settings of Power Loss and Input Phase Failure (see page 107).

With Power Loss set to FREE (factory setting), the following sequence occurs when power is lost or there is a phase failure while the drive controller is running:

- The drive controller freewheel stops (independent of the setting of Input Phase Failure).
- The control logic remains active for at least one second by using the power stored on the drive controller DC bus.
- If input power is restored while the control logic is still active, the drive controller automatically restarts independent of the Command type (in the $6 \rightarrow$ Drive Configuration menu) selected. If input power is restored when the control logic is no longer active, the drive controller will follow a normal power-up sequence. Restart of the drive controller requires a run command and the absence of faults.

With power loss set to RAMP, the following sequence occurs when power is lost or there is a phase failure while the drive controller is running:

- When the DC bus voltage reaches $80 \%$ of its initial value, the drive controller is commanded to decelerate following a ramp. The deceleration attempts to recover inertial energy stored in the load to enable the drive controller to operate the motor for as long as possible during loss of power.
- The control logic remains active for at least one second by using the power stored on the drive controller DC bus.
- Once the DC bus voltage becomes too low to allow motor operation, the drive controller freewheel stops.
- If input power is restored while the control logic is still active, the drive controller will automatically restart independent of the Command type (in the $6 \rightarrow$ Drive Configuration menu) selected. If input power is restored when the control logic is no longer active, the drive controller will follow a normal power-up sequence. Restart of the drive controller requires a run command and the absence of faults.

To use the RAMP mode of Power Loss, Input Phase Failure must be set to NO. Otherwise, the drive controller will operate as if Power Loss were set to FREE.

The selection of FREE or RAMP depends on the amount and type of disturbance that the load can tolerate during a power loss. Setting Power Loss to FREE allows a longer deceleration time but requires the drive controller to resynchronize to the motor once power returns. FREE is generally best suited for installations which experience long periods of power loss. Setting power Loss to RAMP decelerates the motor more rapidly during power loss and does not require the drive controller to resynchronize to the motor. If power is restored while the motor is still running, recovery to commanded speed occurs rapidly. RAMP is generally best suited for installations which experience short periods of power loss.


## A WARNING

UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT ACTION

- Automatic restart can only be used for machines or installations that present no danger for personnel or equipment in the event of automatic restarting
- Equipment operation must conform with national and local safety regulations.

Failure to follow this instruction can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

Enabling Automatic Restart allows up to five restart attempts after the drive controller has tripped on a fault. The time between restart attempts is programmable from 1 to 600 seconds. The power supply and control commands must be maintained for an Automatic restart.

To enable Automatic Restart, select Yes, specify the number of restart attempts (15 ) and set time between restart attempts (1-600 s).

If the drive controller trips on a fault that is automatically resettable and Automatic Restart is enabled, the drive controller is locked for the programmed time period, then resets the drive controller if the fault condition has disappeared. Then, if commanded to run, the drive controller restarts the motor. If the fault condition remains during the reset attempt, the drive controller locks for the programmed period of time, and the restart command is repeated at the programmed delay time for the programmed number of restarts (maximum of 5 times) before the drive controller trips. See Table 37 on page 101 for faults that can be automatically reset.

Catch On Fly

Catch On Fly Set to NO (Refer to Figure 63)

Note that only if the drive controller is configured for 2-wire command will it automatically restart the motor. If the drive controller is configured for 3-wire command, Automatic Restart is not available. For 2-wire and 3-wire command, see pages 68 and 68.

Catch on Fly is used to regain control of a spinning load after an event such as loss of power or freewheel stop. For proper operation of this function, the drive controller should be configured for 2-wire control. Also, the rotation direction of the freewheeling load must be the same as the rotation direction of the drive controller.

Three possible selections appear for the catch on fly function. These selections are Ilimit, Ramp, and NO. NO is the default setting.

When commanded to start into a spinning load, the drive controller will reset its output frequency to zero and begin to ramp at the set acceleration ramp rate to the commanded speed. As the frequency increases, the output current increases until the drive controller current limit is reached. The torque produced by the motor current will reduce the speed of the spinning motor to a point where the motor rotational speed matches the drive controller output frequency. Once this occurs, the currents decrease and the drive controller can then accelerate the load to the commanded speed.
The advantage to this control method is that it does not require any user sequencing of the drive controller power or control. In addition, it does not require the presence of any residual voltage at the motor for proper operation. This method does have the disadvantage that the change in motor speed during resynchronization may be unacceptable to some applications since the motor could be forced to near-zero speed before re-acceleration can occur.


Figure 63: Catch On Fly Set to NO

Catch On Fly Set to
RAMP (Refer to
Figure 64)

When commanded to start into a spinning load, the drive controller will use the residual voltage present at the motor terminals to estimate motor speed. If no residual voltage is present, then the control method reverts to that described in "Catch On Fly Set to NO." If residual voltage is present, then the drive controller initial output frequency is set to the estimated speed value allowing the motor to rapidly synchronize to the drive controller output frequency.
The drive controller then increases the motor speed at the set acceleration ramp rate to the commanded speed. If a run command is present, the drive controller will start in this mode when the LI1 input is cycled from logic 1 to logic 0 and back to logic 1 or, following a brief power outage for which the control logic remains active (Green LED on drive controller remains lit). If the control logic becomes inactive during the power outage (Green LED on drive controller goes out), the restart control method reverts to that described in "Catch On Fly Set to NO."

The advantage to this control method is that it produces the least additional speed disturbance of the three Catch On Fly selections while the motor is synchronizing to the drive controller output. This method does have the disadvantage that residual motor voltage must be present for speed estimation to occur.


Figure 64: Catch On Fly Set to RAMP

When commanded to start into a spinning load, the drive controller output voltage is reduced and the drive controller output frequency is set to the commanded frequency. While the voltage is being reduced, the drive controller output voltage is synchronized to the motor. If synchronization is not possible, the restart control method reverts to that described in "Catch On Fly Set to NO." If synchronization is possible, the drive controller output voltage is then raised causing the motor to rapidly accelerate to commanded speed.

Acceleration generally occurs with the drive controller at current limit. Provided that a run command is present, the drive controller will start following an extended power outage where the control logic is no longer active (Green LED on drive controller is out). The run command must be activated prior to or during the drive controller power-up sequence for this mode to be active.
The advantage to this control method is that it can resynchronize to command speed in the least amount of time of the three Catch on Fly selections, since reacceleration generally occurs with the controller at current limit. Also, this method, which does not require the presence of residual motor voltage, is useful when
regaining control of high inertia loads after extended power outages. If the command speed matches the motor speed, little if any motor disturbance is seen during restarting. This is useful when restarting a single motor on a moving process line.

This method does have the disadvantage that the motor torque disturbance during resynchronization may be unacceptable to some applications, since the motor attempts to accelerate to the commanded speed at the current limit setting of the controller.


Nm - Motor Speed
Nsp - Commanded
Speed
Vm - Motor Voltage
Im - Motor Current
LII - Run Enable
LI2 - Run Forward

| A W/ARN/NG |
| :--- |
| MOTOR OVERHEATING |
| This drive controller does not provide direct thermal protection for the motor. Use of a |
| thermal sensor in the motor may be required for protection at all speeds or loading |
| conditions. Consult motor manufacturer for thermal capability of motor when operated |
| over desired speed range. |
| Failure to follow this instruction can result in death, serious injury, or equipment |
| damage. | damage.



Motor Overload enables the drive controller to protect a standard asynchronous induction motor from overload. This function can replace a conventional class 10 thermal overload relay for single motor applications; however, multi-motor applications require individual external thermal overload motor protection.

Adjustment of Motor Overload

Types of Protection
Self-Cooled Motor

No Thermal Protection

This function is more effective in protecting a motor operated from a drive controller because it considers motor speed as well as time and current in its protection algorithm. This is important since most motors applied on drive controllers are self-cooled, and their cooling effectiveness declines at lower speeds. The drive controller's protection algorithm integrates motor current over time, taking into account factors such as stop time and idle time.

To adjust Motor Overload, first select the type of protection in the $7.4 \rightarrow$ Fault Management menu. Two types of protection are available from the Motor Overload screen:

1. For Self-Cooled Motor
2. No thermal protection

Factory setting is Self-Cooled Motor. Once the type of protection is selected, the Motor Overload current can be set in either the $1 \rightarrow$ Parameter Setting menu or in this screen. Motor Overload can be adjusted from 0.45 to 1.15 times the nominal drive controller current (see page 54), factory preset is 0.9 times nominal drive controller current (see page 70). Adjust Motor Overload value to nominal motor current. The types of protection are discussed in the following section.

With this type of motor overload protection, the motor base frequency is assumed to be the same as the nominal rated frequency. Enter the motor full load amps for Motor Overload current value.

The overload time-current characteristic is set to allow operation at motor rated current above $50 \%$ of motor base speed. Below $50 \%$ of motor base speed, the timecurrent characteristic is linearly tapered so that at zero speed, the drive will trip on overload at continuous operation above $25 \%$ of the motor overload setting.

The $I^{2} t$ curve, which is used to determine when to trip on a motor overheat condition, emulates a class 10 thermal overload curve.

External thermal overload relays are required when more than one motor is connected to the output or when the motor connected to the drive controller is less than half the drive controller rating. When external overload protection is provided, select "No Thermal Protection."

| A CAUTION |
| :--- |
| LOSS OF MOTOR OVERLOAD PROTECTION |
| When using external overload relays connected to drive controller output, the overload |
| relays must be capable of operation over the expected range of drive controller output |
| frequencies (including direct current). When DC injection braking is used: |
| - The overload relay must be suitable for operation with direct current flowing in the |
| motor. |
| - Do not use overload relays equipped with current transformers for sensing the |
| motor current. |
| Failure to follow this instruction can result in equipment damage. |

The thermal state of the drive controller is not automatically reset when power is removed.

## A CAUTION

## MOTOR OVERHEATING

Repeated reset of the thermal state after a thermal overload can result in thermal stress to the motor.

When faults occur, promptly inspect motor and driven equipment for problems (locked shaft, mechanical overload, etc.) prior to restarting. Also check power supplied to motor for abnormal conditions (phase loss, phase imbalance, etc.).
Failure to follow this instruction can result in damage to the motor.

When a thermal overload fault occurs, a screen appears which asks "Do you want to clear the thermal state?" If NO is selected, the motor overload fault cannot be reset until the thermal state of the motor, as calculated by the motor overload algorithm in the drive controller, is less than $100 \%$.

If YES is selected, the motor overload fault is restrained. The motor overload fault can be reset and the drive controller restarted. The restraint of the motor overload trip will last for approximately one minute. At the end of one minute, the restraint will clear and a motor overload trip will occur. This function can be used to allow maintenance personnel to perform an orderly shut-down of a process in the event of a motor overload fault. Subsequent restraint is possible, if required. However, repeated use of the restraint function can ultimately lead to motor damage.

Input Phase Failure is used to detect loss of one or all input phases. When set to Yes, if one input phase is lost, the drive controller will trip. If the phase is restored and the drive controller is in 2-wire command with the Run Enable and direction inputs high, the drive controller will automatically restart the motor, regardless of the setting of Automatic Restart. If the phase is restored and the drive controller is in 3-wire command, the drive controller will be reset, but the motor will not start. If more than one phase is lost, the drive will trip on undervoltage.

Input phase failure can be inhibited by selecting No when a line contactor is used with the drive controller and control power is supplied separately to CL1-CL2, or in special applications when a common DC bus tie is used. When set to No, input phase loss will be ignored, however undervoltage will be displayed if the DC bus voltage is less than the undervoltage level but sufficient to maintain the drive controller power supply. The Fault State relay R1 will remain energized whenever voltage is present on CL1 and CL2, as long as there are no other faults. The undervoltage condition must be cleared prior to the drive controller recognizing a run command.

Loss of Follower

| LOSS FOLLOWER |
| :--- |
| No |
| joo to: \#\#\#\#Hz $\square$ |
| Fault. |

Loss of follower is used with the AI2 input and occurs when the $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ or 20-4 mA reference input is less than 3 mA . The drive controller can be programmed to fault, to run at a preset speed (programmable from Low Speed to High Speed), or to ignore the fault condition (factory preset) when loss of follower is detected.

When "Go to \#\#\# Hz" is selected, AI2 must be the only assigned speed reference. All other speed references must be de-selected (see "Speed Reference" on page 79). The adjustment range of "Go to \#\#\# Hz" is 0.1 to 72 Hz .

Fold Back

## Fault Reset

Dynamic Brake Fault

Output Phase Fault


Figure 66: Fold Back

Fold Back is displayed only if the drive controller is configured for variable torque (page 67). Fold Back tapers the current limit curve as shown in Figure 66. Fold Back can be activated or deactivated from the keypad display.


Enabling Fault Reset allows the drive controller to be reset when in Terminal Command mode after tripping on certain faults when an assigned logic input is high. To enable Fault Reset, select Yes and assign a logic input. The faults resettable with this function are: Overvoltage, DC-Bus Overvoltage, Output Phase Loss, Drive Overtemperature, Motor Overload, Loss of Follower, Sequence time-out fault, and Process time-out fault. When in Keypad Command mode (page 65) a function key can be programmed for Fault Reset.

DB Fault is available on drive controllers with dynamic braking. Enabling the function allows the drive controller to protect the resistor and connection by generating a fault if the DB resistor connection is open.

Output Phase Fault is used to detect a loss of output phase. The fault can be inhibited by setting to No for troubleshooting or when the motor connected to the drive controller is less than $45 \%$ of drive controller power. Output Phase Fault is automatically disabled when the Bypass function is used or the drive controller is operated at less than $33 \%$ of nominal frequency.
NOTE: Output Phase Fault should be left enabled, except for the reasons stated above. If it must be disabled (either manually or by the selection of the Bypass function), always supply an external motor overload relay. Operation with the presence of an Output Phase Fault can affect the calibration of the Motor Overload Protection function of the drive controller.

## $8 \rightarrow$ DIAGNOSTIC MODE

## Autodiagnostics



The $8 \rightarrow$ Diagnostic Mode menu allows access to various tests for locating failed components in case of an internal drive controller fault. This menu is accessible only when:

- The drive controller is stopped
- Supply line power (L1, L2 and L3) is disconnected
- Control power supply (CL1, CL2) is connected

If any of these conditions are not met, an error message appears and access to the Diagnostic Mode is denied. Exit the error message screen and return to the Main menu by pressing ESC.

The motor should be connected when performing tests. The following sections cover the functions available from the Diagnostic Mode menu.

```
    AUTOUIAGVOSTIE
MEM \(2 \pm 15\) SUP \& SUP FRQ
TRGNEISTORS TEST
    , * \& ENT to activate
ESC to quit
```

Two tests are available from the Autodiagnostic Screen. Select either or both of the tests by scrolling with the $\boldsymbol{\Delta}$ and $\boldsymbol{\nabla}$ keys and pressing ENT.

1. Memory, $\pm 15$ V Supply, and Supply Frequency initiates a test on the ROM memory, a confirmation of the presence of $\pm 15 \mathrm{~V}$, and a confirmation of the presence of supply frequency.
2. Transistors Tests initiates a test sequence on the drive controller transistor bridge. Note that the length of time required for this test varies with product size and the number of transistors in the bridge. While the test is in progress the Result display (see Figure 67) will report "In Process" on line 2.

| Memory Test | Transistor Test |
| :---: | :---: |
| FIUTOIIAGNOSTIC | AlITODIACINOSTIC: |
| INTERNEL MEMORY : OK | CELLS TEST: IN PROCESS |
| $\pm 15 \cup$ SUPFLY : Ok | T1:OK T3:OK T5:OK |
| FREQ. SUP, IETECT : X | T4:0K T6: ${ }^{\text {T }}$ T2:? |
| OK or $\mathrm{X}=\mathrm{FFOLILT}$ | OK, ? =NON TESTEII OR |
| ESC to guit. | $\mathrm{X}=$ FFIULT ESC to ofuit |

Figure 67: Tests Results

There are three possible responses for each element of a test:

- "OK" indicates that the tested element is good.
- " X " indicates that the tested element is defective.
- "?" (transistor test only) indicates that the transistor could not be tested.

| LOTGIC INPITT TEST |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| IN. | ASSIINNENTS |  |
| LII | RUIN PERMIT | 0 |
| LI2 | RIIN FORWARI | 1 |
| LI3 | FUTTO/MAMNUEL | 1 |
| LI4 | ----- -- |  |

This menu allows you to change the state of the logic inputs to check for good wiring connections. When the Logic Input Test screen is active, changes made to the inputs will change input bit status without affecting the state of the drive controller.


Analog Input Test is similar to Logic Input Test. When this screen is active, you can change the state of the analog inputs to check for good wiring connections without affecting the state of the drive controller.


This menu allows you to change the state of the logic outputs to check for good wiring connections without affecting drive controller operation.

When the Logic Output Test screen is active, all outputs are forced to low (0) state regardless of actual drive controller settings. Changes then made to the outputs will alter bit status without affecting the state of the drive controller. When you leave the Diagnostic Mode and return to Main menu, the logic outputs resume the programmed settings in place before the test sequence.

## A WARNING

## UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT ACTION

Forcing drive controller logic and analog outputs may cause undesired activation of connected equipment.
Set the connected equipment to ignore the change of state.
Failure to follow this instruction can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

## Analog Output Test

```
ANALOGG; DIUTPIIT TEST
OUTT. ASSIGNMENT UEL%
A01 --------------- 0
402 ------------ 1國
FORCE:0=MIN,2=FULL
***& ENT to velid
```

This menu allows you to change the value of the analog outputs to check for good wiring connections without affecting drive controller operation.

When the Analog Output Test screen is active, all output values are forced to 0 regardless of actual drive controller settings. Changes then made to the outputs will alter the setting without affecting the state of the drive controller. When you leave the Diagnostic Mode and return to Main menu, the analog outputs resume the programmed settings in place before the test sequence.

## 9 $\rightarrow$ DRIVE INITIALIZATION MENU

Total Factory Settings

```
    9+ IRIVE INIT.
TOTHZL FACTORY SETT.
USER SETTING STORE
RECALL ISER SETTING
```

This menu is only accessible when the drive controller is stopped. It allows the original factory default parameter settings to be restored to the drive controller, or the user configuration and adjustment settings to be saved to or recalled from a memory card (VW3A66901T).

This selection returns all of the drive controller adjustment and configuration parameters to the original factory default settings.

| 9.1*TOT. FACTORY SETT. | ENT | THIS ACTION CLEARS THE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Io you want to change all the parameters to factory settings? |  | ACTUAL CONFIGURETION ANI SETTINGS <br> e you sure? |
| ENT to conf irm ESC to abort |  | ENT to confirm |


| A W/ARN/NG |
| :--- |
| UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT ACTION |
| - Factory default settings will be substituted for present settings when Total Factory |
| Settings is selected and confirmed. |
| - Factory default settings may not be compatible with the application. After returning |
| to total factory settings, verify that default settings are compatible with application |
| requirements. |
| Failure to follow this instruction can result in death, serious injury, or equipment |
| damage. |

NOTE: The PCMCIA Memory Card cannot transfer files between drive controllers of different power ratings or between drive controllers which contain different versions of software. See page 54 to determine controller power rating and software version.
Up to 16 configurations can be saved in a PCMCIA memory card (catalog number VW3A66901T). After selecting Store User Settings, a message will appear prompting you to insert a memory card:

```
FLEASE INSERT
THE MEMORY CARII
INTO THE FCMCIA
    CONNECTOR
ENT when reade
```

The following illustration shows the Store User Settings menu. The black boxes correspond to configurations already stored in the card. Select an empty box. In this example, 1 is selected. To store, press ENT. When the configuration has been saved, a message will appear indicating whether or not the save operation was successful.


## Recall User Settings

To download a configuration from a PCMCIA memory card to the drive controller, select Recall User Settings. Install the memory card. A message will appear:


Select one black box. In the example shown above, " 10 " is selected. Press ENT to download. When the configuration has been downloaded, a message will appear indicating whether or not the transfer was successful. If an error was made in selecting a box (file) number, a message will indicate an incompatible or empty file.

NOTE: When recalling user settings, the physical configuration and power rating of the drive controller must match the physical configuration and power rating of the drive controller from which the settings were copied. If the physical configuration and power rating do not match, then a message will indicate an incompatible file.

## Chapter 6 - Class 8839 ATV56 Combination Devices

INTRODUCTION ..... 117
CONTROLLER PART NUMBERS ..... 118
CONTROLLER NAMEPLATE IDENTIFICATION ..... 118
TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS ..... 119
Specifications ..... 122
Short-Circuit Withstand Ratings ..... 123
DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHTS FOR WALL OR PANEL MOUNTING ..... 124
HANDLING DRIVE CONTROLLERS ..... 128
PRELIMINARY INSPECTION ..... 128
WIRE ROUTING AND INTERCONNECTION ..... 129
Wire Class ..... 129
Noise Class ..... 129
Quiet Wiring 1 (QW1) ..... 129
Quiet Wiring 2 (QW2) ..... 129
Standard Wiring 1 (SW1) ..... 129
Standard Wiring 2 (SW2) ..... 129
Standard Wiring 3 (SW3) ..... 129
Pulse Wiring 1 (PW1) ..... 129
Voltage Class ..... 130
TERMINAL STRIP LOCATIONS ..... 131
POWER WIRING ..... 134
CONTROL WIRING ..... 135
SEQUENCE OF OPERATION AND OPTIONS ..... 138
Terminal Command Mode vs. Keypad Command Mode ..... 138
POWER CIRCUIT W COMBINATION PACKAGE ..... 139
POWER CIRCUIT Y BYPASS PACKAGE ..... 142
POWER CIRCUIT Z REMOTE STARTER BYPASS PACKAGE ..... 146
PROPER DRIVE ISOLATION METHOD ..... 150
CONTROL CIRCUIT DIAGRAMS ..... 151

## A DANGER

## HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK OR BURN

- This equipment must be installed and serviced only by qualified electrical personnel.
- Turn off power supplying this equipment before working on or inside equipment.
- Always use a properly rated voltage sensing device to confirm power is off.
- Replace all devices, doors, and covers before turning on power to this equipment.


## DRIVE ISOLATION HAZARD

Before servicing the drive controller:

- Disconnect all power.
- Place a "Do Not Turn On" label on drive controller
- Lock disconnect in Open position.

Before servicing basic power converter when Bypass is selected:

- Perform all functions listed above.
- Measure voltages at disconnect output to verify they are zero.
- Wait 1 minute to allow DC bus to discharge, verify no voltage is present.
- Remove line fuses labeled FU1, FU2, and FU3 with tool provided.
- Replace cover, then close disconnect.

Failure to observe these precautions will result in death or serious injury.

## INTRODUCTION

## Terminology

The Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 drives are combination devices composed of drive controller, power circuit box with options, and wall-mountable back pan. The Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 drive controllers are available in combination, bypass, or remote starter bypass power circuit configurations.

The following terminology is used throughout this chapter and is specific to the Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 drive controller family.

- When used as a component of the Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 drive controller, the ATV56U41 through ATV56D79 controllers described in Chapters 1-5 of this instruction bulletin are referred to as Power Converters. This distinction is made to minimize confusion when discussing installation and adjustment practices.
- The combination of the power converter, enclosure, power and control circuits which constitutes the Class 8839 product is referred to as the Drive Controller or Controller.
- The combination of the controller and motor is referred to as the Drive.
- The power circuit box mounted below the power converter is referred to as the BELE box.
- The variable torque rating is referred to as $V T$.
- The variable torque, low noise rating is referred to as VTLN.


## A DANGER

HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, BURN, OR EXPLOSION
Turn off power supplying this equipment before working inside.
Failure to follow this instruction will result in death, personal injury, or electrical shock.

Follow these precautions unique to the Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 drive controller:

- The controller is suitable for installation in a Pollution Degree 3 environment as defined in NEMA ICS1 and IEC 664-1. The expected environment must be compatible with this rating.
- When attaching wall-mountable controllers to their mounting surfaces, use fasteners rated for the weight of the apparatus, the expected shock and vibration of the installation, and the expected environment.
- Provide sufficient cooling for expected heat load.


## CONTROLLER PART NUMBERS

The controller part number, located on the nameplate attached to the mounting panel, is coded to describe the configuration and options present. Use Table 38 to translate the part number into a description of the drive controller.

Table 38: Controller Part Numbers

| Field | Digit | Characteristic | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 01 | 01-03 | Controller style | 56U Fan and Pump Drive (US only) |
| 02 | 04 | Horsepower | $\mathbf{C}=1 \mathrm{hp}$ $\mathbf{L}=25 \mathrm{hp}$ <br> $\mathbf{D}=2 \mathrm{hp}$ $\mathbf{M}=30 \mathrm{hp}$ <br> $\mathbf{E}=3 \mathrm{hp}$ $\mathbf{N}=40 \mathrm{hp}$ <br> $\mathbf{F}=5 \mathrm{hp}$ $\mathbf{P}=50 \mathrm{hp}$ <br> $\mathbf{G}=7.5 \mathrm{hp}$ $\mathbf{Q}=60 \mathrm{hp}$ <br> $\mathbf{H}=10 \mathrm{hp}$ $\mathbf{R}=75 \mathrm{hp}$ <br> $\mathbf{J}=15 \mathrm{hp}$ $\mathbf{S}=100 \mathrm{hp}$ <br> $\mathbf{K}=20 \mathrm{hp}$  |
| 03 | 05 | Enclosure type | G = Type 1 only |
| 04 | 06 | Voltage | $\begin{aligned} & \mathbf{2}=200 / 208 \mathrm{VAC} \\ & \mathbf{3}=230 / 240 \mathrm{VAC} \\ & \mathbf{4}=460 / 480 \mathrm{VAC} \end{aligned}$ |
| 05 | 07 | Torque/application | V = Variable torque rating <br> L = Variable torque, low noise rating |
| 06 | 08 | Power circuit type | Defines which of 3 pre-engineered power circuits are supplied: <br> $\mathbf{W}=$ Combination package <br> Y = Bypass package <br> $\mathbf{Z}=$ Remote starter bypass package |
| 07 | 09 | Miscellaneous options | Defines additional selections to configuration: <br> A = Pilot light cluster 1: Power On (Red), Drive Run (Green), <br> Bypass Run (Green), Drive Fault (Yellow) <br> B = Pilot light cluster 2: Power On (Red), Drive Run (Green), <br> Auto Mode (Green), Drive Fault (Yellow) <br> C = Line isolation contactor <br> D = Omit Hand-Off-Auto selector and speed potentiometer <br> $\mathrm{E}=\mathrm{CSA}$ certification <br> F = Smoke purge option |

CONTROLLER
NAMEPLATE
IDENTIFICATION

The nameplate for the Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 drive controller is located on the left hand side of the back panel. This nameplate, shown in Figure 68, carries the controller class, type, and MOD (options) listing. When identifying or describing Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 drive controllers, use the data from this nameplate.


Figure 68: Controller Nameplate

## TECHNICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Table 39: Variable Torque Class 8839 Enclosed ATV56 Drive Controller Ratings, 460 VAC $\pm 10 \%$

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Controller Part No. | Motor Power $\begin{aligned} & 460 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ <br> hp | Input Line $\begin{gathered} 5,000 \mathrm{Al} \\ 10,000 \mathrm{~A} \end{gathered}$ <br> A | Current ${ }^{[1]}$ $22,000 \mathrm{~A}[3]$ <br> A | Output Current A | Max. <br> Transient Current (60 s) A | Power Converter Part No. |
| 56UCG4V_ | 1 | 2.7 | 3.2 | 2.1 | 2.3 |  |
| 56UDG4V_ | 2 | 4.7 | 5.7 | 3.4 | 3.8 | ATV56U41N4U |
| 56UEG4V_ | 3 | 6.5 | 8 | 4.8 | 5.3 |  |
| 56UFG4V_ | 5 | 9.8 | 11.9 | 7.6 | 8.4 | ATV56U54N4U |
| 56UGG4V_ | 7.5 | 14 | 17 | 11 | 12 | ATV56U72N4U |
| 56UHG4V_ | 10 | 17.7 | 21.4 | 14 | 15.4 | ATV56U90N4U |
| 56UJG4V_ | 15 | 25.1 | 30.6 | 21 | 23 | ATV56D12N4U |
| 56UKG4V_ | 20 | 31.8 | 38.3 | 27 | 30 | ATV56D16N4U |
| 56ULG4V_ | 25 | 38.7 | 47 | 34 | 38 | ATV56D23N4U |
| 56UMG4V_ | 30 | 44 | 52.4 | 40 | 44 | ATV56D33N4U |
| 56UNG4V_ | 40 | 57.1 | 67.6 | 52 | 57 | ATV6D33N4U |
| 56UPG4V_ | 50 | 68.6 | 81.2 | 65 | 72 | ATV56D46N4U |
| 56UQG4V_ | 60 | 86.4* | 94.6 | 77 | 98 | ATV56D54N4U |
| 56URG4V_ | 75 | 106* | 116 | 96 | 116 | ATV56D64N4U |
| 56USG4V_ | 100 | 138* | 150 | 124 | 144 | ATV56D79N4U |

${ }^{1]}$ Short-circuit current available at controller input.
${ }^{[2]} 10,000$ AIC denoted by asterisk (*).
${ }^{[3]}$ For controllers with the Remote Starter Bypass power circuit, the short circuit withstand rating depends on the overcurrent protective device in the user-supplied bypass starter. It cannot exceed 22,000 A.

Table 40: Variable Torque, Low Noise Class 8839 Enclosed ATV56 Drive Controller Ratings, 460 VAC $\pm 10 \%$

| Switching Frequency: 56UCG4L_ to 56UNG4L_= 10 kHz ; 56UPG4L_ to $56 \mathrm{URG4L}_{-}=4 \mathrm{kHz}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Controller Part No. | Motor Power $\begin{aligned} & 460 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ <br> hp | $\begin{array}{\|c} \text { Input Line } \\ 5,000 \mathrm{~A} / \\ 10,000 \mathrm{~A}^{[2]} \\ \mathrm{A} \end{array}$ | Current ${ }^{[1]}$ $22,000 \mathrm{~A}^{[3]}$ <br> A | Output Current <br> A | Max. <br> Transient Current (60 s) A | Power Converter Part No. |
| 56UCG4L_ | 1 | 2.7 | 3.2 | 2.1 | 2.3 | ATV56U41N4U |
| 56UDG4L_ | 2 | 4.7 | 5.7 | 3.4 | 3.8 |  |
| 56UEG4L_ | 3 | 6.5 | 8 | 4.8 | 5.3 |  |
| 56UFG4L | 5 | 9.8 | 11.9 | 7.6 | 8.4 | ATV56U72N4U |
| 56UGG4L_ | 7.5 | 13.9 | 16.7 | 11 | 12 | ATV56U90N4U |
| 56UHG4L_ | 10 | 17.6 | 21.4 | 14 | 15.4 | ATV56D12N4U |
| 56UJG4L | 15 | 24.8 | 29.9 | 21 | 23 | ATV56D16N4U |
| 56UKG4L_ | 20 | 31.9 | 38.7 | 27 | 30 | ATV56D23N4U |
| 56ULG4L_ | 25 | 38.7 | 47 | 34 | 38 | V56D33N |
| 56UMG4L_ | 30 | 44 | 52.4 | 40 | 44 | ATV56D33N4U |
| 56UNG4L_ | 40 | 57.1 | 67.6 | 52 | 57 | ATV56D46N4U |
| 56UPG4L_ | 50 | 68.3 | 80.8 | 65 | 72 | ATV56D54N4U |
| 56UQG4L_ | 60 | 86.4* | 94.6 | 77 | 98 | ATV56D64N4U |
| 56URG4L_ | 75 | 106* | 116 | 96 | 116 | ATV56D79N4U |

${ }^{11]}$ Short-circuit current available at controller input.
${ }^{[2]} 10,000$ AIC denoted by asterisk (*).
${ }^{[3]}$ For controllers with the Remote Starter Bypass power circuit, the short circuit withstand rating depends on the overcurrent protective device in the user-supplied bypass starter. It cannot exceed 22,000 A.

Table 41: Variable Torque Class 8839 Enclosed ATV56 Drive Controller Ratings, 230 VAC $\pm$ 10\%

| Controller Part No. | Switching Frequency: 4 kHz |  |  |  |  | Power Converter Part No. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Motor Power $\begin{aligned} & 230 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ <br> hp | Input Lin $5,000 \mathrm{~A}$ <br> A | Current ${ }^{[1]}$ $22,000 \mathrm{~A}{ }^{[2]}$ <br> A | Output Current <br> A | Max. <br> Transient Current (60 s) <br> A |  |
| 56UCG3V_ | 1 | 4.9 | 5.8 | 4.2 | 5.1 |  |
| 56UDG3V_ | 2 | 8.6 | 10.2 | 6.8 | 8.3 | ATV56U41M2U |
| 56UEG3V_ | 3 | 11.8 | 14 | 9.6 | 11.7 |  |
| 56UFG3V_ | 5 | 17.8 | 21.2 | 15.2 | 18.4 | ATV56U72M2U |
| 56UGG3V_ | 7.5 | 25.8 | 30.6 | 22 | 26.6 |  |
| 56UHG3V_ | 10 | 32.7 | 38.8 | 28 | 34 | ATV56U90M2U |
| 56UJG3V_ | 15 | 46.2 | 54.8 | 42 | 51 | ATV56D12M2U |
| 56UKG3V_ | 20 | 58.7 | 69.4 | 54 | 66 | ATV56D23M2U |
| 56ULG3V_ | 25 | 71.5 | 84.4 | 68 | 83 | ATV56D23M2U |
| 56UMG3V_ | 30 | 81.1 | 97.7 | 80 | 97 |  |
| 56UNG3V_ | 40 | 102.7 | 125.9 | 104 | 126 |  |
| 56UPG3V_ | 50 | 122.6 | 151.1 | 130 | 158 | ATV56D46M2U |

${ }^{[1]}$ Short-circuit current available at controller input.
${ }^{[2]}$ For controllers with the Remote Starter Bypass power circuit, the short circuit withstand rating depends on the overcurrent protective device in the user-supplied bypass starter. It cannot exceed 22,000 A.

Table 42: Variable Torque Class 8839 Enclosed ATV56 Drive Controller Ratings, 230 VAC $\pm 10 \%$

| Switching Frequency: 56UCG3L_ to 56UMG3L_ $=10 \mathrm{Khz}$; 56UNG3L_ $=4 \mathrm{kHz}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Controller Part No. | Motor Power $\begin{aligned} & 230 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ <br> hp | Input Lin $5,000 \mathrm{~A}$ <br> A | Current ${ }^{[1]}$ $22,000 \mathrm{~A} \text { [2] }$ <br> A | Output Current <br> A | Max. Transient Current (60 s) A | Power Converter Part No. |
| 56UCG3L_ | 1 | 5.4 | 6.4 | 4.2 | 5.1 |  |
| 56UDG3L_ | 2 | 8.8 | 10.4 | 6.8 | 8.3 | ATV56U41M2U |
| 56UEG3L_ | 3 | 12 | 14.3 | 9.6 | 11.7 |  |
| 56UFG3L_ | 5 | 18.3 | 21.8 | 15.2 | 18.4 | ATV56U72M2U |
| 56UGG3L_ | 7.5 | 25.8 | 30.7 | 22 | 26.6 | ATV56U90M2U |
| 56UHG3L_ | 10 | 32.8 | 39 | 28 | 34 | ATV56D12M2U |
| 56UJG3L_ | 15 | 46.5 | 55.2 | 42 | 51 | ATV56D16M2U |
| 56UKG3L_ | 20 | 59.6 | 70.3 | 54 | 66 | ATV56D23M2U |
| 56ULG3L_ | 25 | 71.7 | 84.7 | 68 | 83 |  |
| 56UMG3L_ | 30 | 80.8 | 97.2 | 80 | 97 | ATV6D332 |
| 56UNG3L_ | 40 | 102 | 125.4 | 104 | 126 | ATV56D46M2U |

[1] Short-circuit current available at controller input.
[2] For controllers with the Remote Starter Bypass power circuit, the short circuit withstand rating depends on the overcurrent protective device in the user-supplied bypass starter. It cannot exceed 22,000 A.

Table 43: Variable Torque Class 8839 Enclosed ATV56 Drive Controller Ratings, 208 VAC $\pm 10 \%$

| Switching Frequency: 4 kHz |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Controller Part No. | Motor Power $\begin{aligned} & 208 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ <br> hp | Input Lin 5,000 A <br> A | Current ${ }^{[1]}$ $8,800 \mathrm{~A}^{[2]}$ <br> A | Output Current <br> A | Max. <br> Transient Current (60 s) <br> A | Power Converter Part No. |
| 56UCG2V_ | 1 | 5.3 | 5.7 | 4.6 | 5.1 |  |
| 56UDG2V_ | 2 | 9.4 | 10.2 | 7.5 | 8.3 | ATV56U41M2U |
| 56UEG2V_ | 3 | 12.9 | 14 | 10.6 | 11.7 |  |
| 56UFG2V_ | 5 | 19.5 | 21.1 | 16.7 | 18.4 | ATV56U72M2U |
| 56UGG2V_ | 7.5 | 28.2 | 30.6 | 24.2 | 26.6 | ATV56U72M2U |
| 56UHG2V_ | 10 | 35.8 | 38.7 | 31 | 34 | ATV56U90M2U |
| 56UJG2V_ | 15 | 50.6 | 54.7 | 47 | 51 | ATV56D12M2U |
| 56UKG2V_ | 20 | 64.2 | 69.3 | 60 | 66 | ATV56D23M2U |
| 56ULG2V_ | 25 | 77.9 | 84.4 | 75 | 83 | ATV5623M2U |
| 56UMG2V_ | 30 | 88 | 97.7 | 88 | 97 | ATV56D33M2U |
| 56UNG2V_ | 40 | 112 | 124.9 | 114 | 126 | ATV56D33M2U |
| 56UPG2V_ | 50 | 134.3 | 149.3 | 143 | 158 | ATV56D46M2U |

${ }^{[1]}$ Short-circuit current available at controller input.
${ }^{[2]}$ For controllers with the Remote Starter Bypass power circuit, the short circuit withstand rating depends on the overcurrent protective device in the user-supplied bypass starter. It cannot exceed 22,000 A.

Table 44: Variable Torque Class 8839 Enclosed ATV56 Drive Controller Ratings, 208 VAC $\pm \mathbf{1 0 \%}$

| Switching Frequency: 56UCG2L_ to 56UMG2L_ $=10 \mathrm{kHz}$; 56UNG2L_ $=4 \mathrm{kHz}$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Controller Part No. | Motor Power $\begin{aligned} & 208 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 60 \mathrm{~Hz} \end{aligned}$ <br> hp | Input Lin 5,000A <br> A | Current ${ }^{[1]}$ $8,800 \mathrm{~A} \text { [2] }$ <br> A | Output Current <br> A | Max. <br> Transient Current (60 s) A | Power Converter Part No. |
| 56UCG2L_ | 1 | 5.4 | 5.8 | 4.6 | 5.1 |  |
| 56UDG2L_ | 2 | 9.6 | 10.4 | 7.5 | 8.3 | ATV56U41M2U |
| 56UEG3L_ | 3 | 13.2 | 14.3 | 10.6 | 11.7 |  |
| 56UFG3L_ | 5 | 20.1 | 21.8 | 16.7 | 18.4 | ATV56U72M2U |
| 56UGG3L_ | 7.5 | 28.3 | 30.6 | 24.2 | 26.6 | ATV56U90M2U |
| 56UHG3L_ | 10 | 35.9 | 38.9 | 31 | 34 | ATV56D12M2U |
| 56UJG3L_ | 15 | 51 | 55.1 | 47 | 51 | ATV56D16M2U |
| 56UKG3L_ | 20 | 65.2 | 70.3 | 60 | 66 | ATV56D23M2U |
| 56ULG3L_ | 25 | 77.4 | 84.7 | 75 | 83 |  |
| 56UMG3L_ | 30 | 87.5 | 97.2 | 88 | 97 |  |
| 56UNG3L_ | 40 | 111.3 | 124.2 | 114 | 126 | ATV56D46M2U |

[1] Short-circuit current available at controller input.
[2] For controllers with the Remote Starter Bypass power circuit, the short circuit withstand rating depends on the overcurrent protective device in the user-supplied bypass starter. It cannot exceed 8,800 A.

## Specifications

Table 45 contains specifications for 460 V and 208/230 V drive controllers.
Table 45: Specifications

| Input voltage | $460 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$, or $208 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$, or $230 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| Displacement power factor | Approximately 0.96 |
| Input frequency | $60 \mathrm{~Hz} \pm 2 \%$ |
| Output voltage | Maximum voltage equal to input line voltage |
| Frequency resolution | Input AI1: (High Speed/1,024) Hz [1] Input AI2: (High Speed/512) Hz ${ }^{[1]}$ <br> Keypad display: 0.1 Hz increments <br> Processor: 0.015 Hz increments <br> Option Module: Input AI3: (High Speed/4,096) Hz [1] Input AI4: (High Speed/4,096) Hz [1] |
| Frequency accuracy | $\pm(0.0075 \mathrm{~Hz}+0.00005$ times High Speed) |
| Temperature drift [2] | Analog inputs: $3 \times 10^{-4}$ times High Speed/ ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ typical Keypad display: $7 \times 10^{-7}$ times High Speed $/{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ maximum |
| Frequency range of power converter | ATV56U41N4 to D79N4: 0.1 to 72 Hz ATV56U41M2 to D46M2: 0.1 to 72 Hz |
| Torque/overtorque | See Chapter 3 |
| Speed reference | AI1: 0-10 V <br> AI2: $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> $0-5 \mathrm{~V}$ with switch on control board 0-20 mA, x-20 mA, 20-4 mA with keypad display <br> Manual speed potentiometer to AI1 |
| Speed regulation | V/f: determined by motor slip, typically 3\% SLFV (sensorless flux vector): 1\% |
| Efficiency | Typically greater than 96\% |
| Reference sample time | 10 ms |
| Ramps | Acceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds Deceleration: 0.1 to 999.9 seconds |
| Motor protection | Class 10 overload protection with bypass option in addition to controller internal electronic thermal protection |
| Keypad display | - Self-diagnostics with full fault messages in three languages <br> - Also refer to Chapter 5 |
| Temperature | Operation: +32 to $+104{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\left(0\right.$ to $\left.+40^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$ Storage: -13 to $+158^{\circ} \mathrm{F}\left(-25\right.$ to $\left.+70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$ |
| Humidity | 95\% maximum without condensation or dripping water |
| Altitude | $\leq 3,300 \mathrm{ft}(1,000 \mathrm{~m})$; above this derate by $1.2 \%$ for every $300 \mathrm{ft}(100 \mathrm{~m})$, max. 6,600 ft (2,000 m) |
| Enclosure | Type 1 |
| Pollution degree | Pollution Degree 3 per NEMA ICS-1 and IEC 664-1 |
| Operational test vibration | Conforming to IEC 721-3-3-3M3 amplitude 1.5 mm peak to peak from 2 to 9 Hz |
| Transit test to shock | Conforming to National Safe Transit Association and International Safe Transit Association test for packages weighing 100 lbs and over |
| Codes and standards | - UL Listed per UL 508C under category NMMS as incorporating Class 10 electronic and electromechanical overload protection <br> - CSA Certified (Label is optional) <br> - Conforms to applicable NEMA ICS, NFPA, IEC, and ISO 9001 standards |

${ }^{[1]}$ Resolution limited to processor resolution.
${ }^{[2]}$ Drive Controller at operating load and temperature.

## Short-Circuit Withstand Ratings

Table 46: Short-Circ uit Withstand Rating of Controller Power Circuits

| Controller Part No. | Short-CIrcuit Withstand <br> Rating (Symmetrical) | Bypass Path Overcurrent <br> Protective Device |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| 56UCG2VW to 56UPG2VW <br> 56UCG2LW to 56UNG2LW | $8,800 \mathrm{~A}$ | - |
| 56UCG2VY to 56UPG2VY <br> 56UCG2LY to 56UNG2LY | $8,800 \mathrm{~A}$ | Motor Circuit Protector |
| 56UCG2VZ to 56UPG2VZ <br> 56UCG2LZ to 56UNG2LZ | 8,800 A | Dependent upon OCPD by user- <br> supplied bypass starter ${ }^{11]}$ |
| 56UCG3VW to 56UPG3VW <br> 56UCG3LW to 56UNG3LW | $22,000 \mathrm{~A}$ |  |
| 56UCG3VY to 56UPG3VY <br> 56UCG3LY to 56UNG3LY | $22,000 \mathrm{~A}$ | Motor Circuit Protector |
| 56UCG3VZ to 56UPG3VZ <br> 56UCG3LZ to 56UNG3LZ | $22,000 \mathrm{~A}$ | Dependent upon OCPD by user- <br> supplied bypass starter ${ }^{[1]}$ |
| 56UCG4VW to 56UPG4VW <br> 56UCG4LW to 56URG4LW | $22,000 \mathrm{~A}$ | - |
| 56UCG4VY to 56USG4VY <br> 56UCG4LY to 56URG4LY | $22,000 \mathrm{~A}$ | Dependent upon OCPD by user- <br> supplied bypass starter [1] |
| 56UCG4VZ to 56USG4VZ <br> 56UCG4LZ to 56URG4LZ |  | A |

${ }^{[1]}$ OCPD = Overcurrent Protective Device - limited by available short-circuit current rating of user-supplied bypass starter, $\leq 22,000 \mathrm{~A}$.

DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHTS FOR WALL OR PANEL MOUNTING


| HP |  |  | D |  | Weight |  | A |  | B |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | in | mm | lb | kg | in | mm | in | mm |
| $\begin{aligned} & 1-7.5 \text { (VT) } \\ & 1-5 \text { (VTLN) } \end{aligned}$ | 1-3 (VT \& VTLN) | 1-3 (VT \& VTLN) | 6.60 | 168 | 74.5 | 33.7 |  |  |  |  |
| $\begin{gathered} \text { 10-15 (VT) } \\ 7.5-10 \text { (VTLN) } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 5-10(\mathrm{VT}) \\ 5-7.5 \text { (VTLN) } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 5-10(\mathrm{VT}) \\ 5-7.5 \text { (VTLN) } \end{gathered}$ | 7.68 | 195 | 80 | 36.2 | $\begin{aligned} & .500 \\ & .750 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 12.7 \\ & 19.0 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & .500 \\ & .750 \\ & 1.00 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & 12.7 \\ & 19.0 \\ & 25.4 \end{aligned}$ |
| $\begin{gathered} 20 \text { (VT) } \\ 15-20 \text { (VTLN) } \end{gathered}$ | 10 (VTLN) | 10 (VTLN) | 9.00 | 229 | 95 | 42.9 |  |  |  |  |

Figure 69: Mounting Information for 1-20 hp VT \& VTLN, 460 V; 1-10 hp VT \& VTLN, 208/230 V


Figure 70: Mounting Information for 25 hp VT, 460 V; 15 hp VT \& VTLN, 208/230V


LIFTING HOLE DETAIL


CONDUIT ENTRIES - TOP VIEW


CONDUIT ENTRIES - BOTTOM VIEW


| HP |  |  | Weight |  | A |  | B |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | lb | kg | in | mm | in | mm |
| $20-50(\mathrm{VT})$ | $20-25(\mathrm{VT} \& \mathrm{VTLN})$ | $20-25(\mathrm{VT} \& \mathrm{VTLN})$ | 170 | 76.9 | .500 | 12.7 | .500 | 12.7 |
| $25-40(\mathrm{VTLN})$ |  |  |  | .750 | 19.0 | .750 | 19.0 |  |

Figure 71: Mounting Information for 30-50 hp VT \& 25-40 hp VTLN, 460 V; 20-25 hp VT \& VTLN, 208/230 V

MOUNTING


LIFTING HOLE DETAIL


CONDUIT ENTRIES - TOP VIEW


CONDUIT ENTRIES - BOTTOM VIEW


| HP |  |  | Weight |  | A |  | B |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 460 V | 230 V | 208 V | lb | kg | in | mm | in | mm |
|  |  |  |  |  | 1.00 | 25.4 |  |  |
| 60-100 (VT) | 30-50 (VT) | 30-50 (VT) | 275 | 125 | 1.25 | 31.75 | . 500 | 12.7 |
| 50-75 (VTLN) | 30-40 (VTLN) | 30-40 (VTLN) | 275 | 125 | 2.00 | 50.80 | . 750 | 19.0 |
|  |  |  |  |  | 2.50 | 63.50 |  |  |

Figure 72: Mounting Information for $60-100 \mathrm{hp}$ VT \& 50-75 hp VTLN, 460 V ; $\mathbf{3 0 - 5 0} \mathrm{hp}$ VT \& $\mathbf{3 0 - 4 0} \mathrm{hp}$ VTLN, 208/230 V

## HANDLING DRIVE CONTROLLERS

Prior to installation:

1. Open the power converter door and remove access cover located on the drive controller BELE box.
2. Visually verify that all internal mounting hardware and terminal connection hardware is properly seated, securely fastened, and undamaged.
3. Visually verify that the control board on the power converter is properly seated, securely fastened, and undamaged. Verify that internal wiring connections are tight. Inspect all connections for damage.
4. Close and secure the drive controller door and replace access cover.

| A CAUTION |
| :--- |
| EQUIPMENT DAMAGE HAZARD |
| Do not operate or install any drive controller that appears damaged. |
| Failure to follow this instruction can result in injury or equipment damage. |

The Wire Class describes the compatibility of the field wiring terminal with the conductor material and insulation system. When used in conjunction with the required conductor current rating and controller rated ambient temperature, the Wire Class forms the basis for the selection of a conductor size which will limit the temperature on the conductor insulation at the field wiring terminal within acceptable limits. Conductors with operating temperatures exceeding those given by the Wire Class may be used, but the conductor size must be selected based on the Wire Class limits.

The Noise Class is used to categorize the electromagnetic properties of the voltages and currents present. Wiring is classified into six categories for selection of wiring methods and physical segregation purposes.

High susceptibility analog and digital control signals. Signals falling under this classification include digital communication/network circuits, controller analog I/O and analog process signals.

Medium susceptibility, analog and digital control signals. Signals falling under this classification include 24 VDC and AC control circuits.

Low susceptibility control or power circuits rated less than 600 VAC ( 250 VDC) and less than 15 A (voltage and current spectra are generally contained within $0.05-9 \mathrm{kHz}$ ). Signals falling under this classification include 120 VAC control circuits.

Power circuits rated greater than 15 A (voltage and current spectra are generally contained within $0.05-9 \mathrm{kHz}$ ). Signals falling under this classification include line power to controllers.

Reserved.

Control or power circuits whose voltage or current spectra significantly exceed 9 kHz . Signals falling under this classification include motor and dynamic braking circuits fed from PWM power converters.

## Voltage Class

The Voltage Class is used to categorize the voltages present into recognized conductor insulation categories ( $30,150,300$, and 600 V ) for selection of conductor insulation voltage rating and physical segregation purposes.

Based upon the Noise Class and Voltage Class of the conductors, the wiring methods in Table 47 should be applied to the drive system.

Table 47: Wire Routing and Interconnection

| Wiring Methods and Considerations | Noise Class of Conductors ${ }^{[1]}$ |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | QW1 | QW2 | SW1 | SW2 | PW1 |
| Conductor Grouping in Wireways/Conduits <br> 1. All conductors of 1 or 3 phase AC power circuits must be bundled to minimize stray magnetic fields. |  |  | X | X | X |
| 2. All conductors of a DC power circuit must be bundled to minimize stray magnetic fields. |  |  | X | X | X |
| 3. When paralleled conductors must be run in separate wireways or conduit, bundle conductors into groups that minimize stray magnetic fields. |  |  |  | X | X |
| 4. Maintain conductor runs as short and direct as practical. | X | X | X | X | X |
| Separation of Circuits <br> 1. DO NOT run different Noise Class conductors in the same conduit. | X | X | X | X | X |
| 2. DO NOT run different Voltage Class conductors in same conduit unless all conductors are insulated for the maximum Voltage Class present. | X | X | X | X | X |
| 3. All PW conductor groups must be individually segregated using metallic conduit. |  |  |  |  | X |
| 4. Segregate all conductors by Noise Class. Use the following circuit separation when conductors can run parallel for more than 12 inches. |  |  |  |  |  |
| - Metallic conduit: 3 in between QW to SW/PW | X | X | X | X | X |
| - Metallic tray: 3 in between SW to PW |  |  | X | X | X |
| - Metallic tray: 6 in between QW to SW/PW | X | X | X | X | X |
| - Against continuous metal surface: 3 in between SW to PW |  |  | X | X | X |
| - Against continuous metal surface: 6 in between QW to SW/PW | X | X | X | X | X |
| - Metallic conduit housing QW: 12 in to non-metallic conduit SW/PW | X | X | X | X | X |
| - Non-metallic conduit: 3 in between SW to PW |  |  | X | X | X |
| - Non-metallic conduit: 24 in between QW to SW/PW | X | X | X | X | X |
| 5. If QW and SW1 wiring must cross SW2 or PW1 wiring, the bundles must cross at right angles. | X | X | X | X | X |
| Common Mode Noise Issues <br> 1. Provide adjacent signal returns using twisted pair cable. | X | X |  |  |  |
| 2. Galvanically isolate signal and associated signal return path when possible. | X | X |  |  |  |
| Shielding <br> 1. Use metallic conduit for all power and control circuits external to the controller enclosure. | X | X | X | X | X |
| 2. Shields must be continuous and equipped with a drain wire. | X | X | X |  |  |
| 3. DO NOT group different Noise Class conductors within the same shield. | X | X | X | X | X |
| 4. Minimize non-shielded portion of conductor at the ends of shielded cable. | X | X | X | X | X |
| 5. When shielding AC or DC power conductors, group conductors to minimize magnetic field in shield. |  |  | X | X | X |
| Grounding <br> 1. Ground shields at one end only (the controller end). | X | X | X | X | X |
| 2. Use separate ground wire for each shield ground. | X | X | X | X | X |
| 3. Provide a ground wire with all conductor groups whether in tray or conduit. |  |  | X | X | X |
| 4. When multiple grounds must be made to a shielded power cable, the shield must have the same short circuit withstand capability as the ground conductor in the power cable. |  |  | X | X | X |
| 5. Terminate all power grounds and power shield grounds to the controller grounding point or bar. |  |  | X | X | X |
| 6. Terminate all signal shield grounds to the terminals provided. | X | X |  |  |  |
| 7. Always supply a separate equipment grounding conductor with the controller power feed. DO NOT depend upon metallic conduit for ground connection. |  |  | X | X | X |

[^5]
## TERMINAL STRIP LOCATIONS

Figures 74 through 78 show terminal strip locations for Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 combination devices. Tables 48 through 51 list wire size and torque requirements.


Figure 74: Terminal Strip Locations for 1 - 50 hp VT \& 1 - 40 hp VTLN, 460 V ; 1-25 hp VT \& VTLN, 208/230 V (Power Circuit W)


Figure 75: Terminal Strip Locations for 1 - 50 hp VT \& 1 - 40 hp VTLN, 460 V ; 1-25 hp VT \& VTLN, 208/230 V (Power Circuit Y or Z)


Figure 76: Terminal Strip Locations for 60-100 hp VT \& 50-75 hp VTLN, 460 V; 30-50 hp VT \& 30-40 hp VTLN, 208/230 V (Power Circuit W)


Figure 77: Terminal Strip Locations for 60 hp VT \& 50-60 hp VTLN, 460 V (Power Circuit Y or Z)


Figure 78: Terminal Strip Locations for 75 - 100 hp VT \& 75 hp VTLN, 460 V; 30-50 hp VT \& 30-40 hp VTLN, 208/230 V (Power Circuit Y or Z)

Table 48: Power Terminal Strip Characteristics

| Terminal | Function | Characteristic |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| GND |  | $208 \mathrm{VAC} \pm 10 \%(56 \mathrm{U} \cdot \mathrm{G} 2 \bullet \bullet$ units $)$ |
| L1 | 3-phase power supply | $230 \mathrm{VAC} \pm 10 \%(56 \mathrm{U} \cdot \mathrm{G} 3 \bullet \bullet$ units $)$ |
| L2 |  | $460 \mathrm{VAC} \pm 10 \%(56 \mathrm{U} \cdot \mathrm{G} 4 \bullet \bullet$ units $)$ |
| L3 |  | 47 to 63 Hz |
| T1 |  | 0 to $208 \mathrm{VAC}(56 \mathrm{U} \cdot \mathrm{G} 2 \bullet \bullet$ units $)$ |
| T2 | Output Connections to motor | 0 to $230 \mathrm{VAC}(56 \mathrm{U} \cdot \mathrm{G} \cdot \bullet$ units $)$ |
| T3 |  | 0 to 460 VAC $(56 \mathrm{U} \cdot \mathrm{G} 4 \bullet \bullet$ units $)$ |

Table 49: Power Terminal Wire Range

| Class 8839 Drive Controller Type |  | Terminals |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | L1, L2, L3 (Line) |  | T1, T2, T3 (Load) |  | GND |  |
| 208/230 VAC | 460 VAC | Max. <br> Wire Size (AWG) | Terminal Torque (lb-in) | Max. <br> Wire Size (AWG) | Terminal Torque (lb-in) | Max. <br> Wire Size (AWG) | Terminal Torque (lb-in) |
| 56UCG2/3*W to 56UFG2/3*W | 56UCG4*W to 56UHG4*W | 4 | 35 | 2/0 | 120 | 4 | 35 |
| 56UGG2/3*W to 56UHG2/3*W | 56UJG4*W to 56UKG4*W | 1/0 | 80 | 2/0 | 120 | 4 | 35 |
| 56UJG2/3*W to 56ULG2/3*W | 56ULG4*W to 56UPG4VW | 1/0 | 80 | 2/0 | 120 | 1/0 | 45 |
|  | 56UPG4LW | 1/0 | 80 | 4/0 | 150 | 1/0 | 45 |
| 56UMG2/3*W to 56UPG2/3*W | 56UQG4*W to 56USG4*W | 350 | 250 | 4/0 | 150 | 1/0 | 45 |
| 56UCG2/3*Y to 56UFG2/3*Y 56UCG2/3*Z to 56UFG2/3*Z | 56UCG4*Y to 56UHG4* 56UCG4*Z to 56UHG4*Z | 4 | 35 | 8 | 15 | 4 | 35 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { 56UGG2/3*Y } \\ & \text { 56UGG2/3*Z } \end{aligned}$ | 56UJG4*Y 56UJG4*Z | 1/0 | 80 | 8 | 15 | 4 | 35 |
| $\begin{aligned} & 56 U H G 2 / 3^{*} Y \\ & 56 U H G 2 / 3 * Z \end{aligned}$ | 56UKG4*Y 56UKG4*Z | 1/0 | 80 | 6 | 15 | 4 | 35 |
| 56UJG2/3*Y to 56ULG2/3*Y 56UJG2/3*Z to 56ULG2/3*Z | 56ULG4*Y to 56UPG4*Y 56ULG4*Z to 56UPG4*Z | 1/0 | 80 | 1/0 | 75 | 1/0 | 45 |
|  | 56UQG4*Y 56UQG4*Z | 350 | 250 | 1/0 | 75 | 1/0 | 45 |
| 56UMG2/3*Y to 56UNG2/3*Y 56UMG2/3*Z to 56UNG2/3*Z | 56URG4*Y <br> 56URG4*Z | 350 | 250 | 3/0 | 200 | 1/0 | 45 |
| 56UPG2/3*Y 56UPG2/3*Z | 56USG4*Y 56USG4*Z | 350 | 250 | 3/0 | 200 | 1/0 | 45 |

Table 50: Control Terminal Strip Characteristics (Power Circuit W)

| Terminal [1][2] | Function | Characteristics |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | LO1 (Logic Output 1) | $24 \mathrm{~V}, 200 \mathrm{~mA}$ max. ${ }^{55]}$ |
| 2 | LO2 (Logic Output 2) | $24 \mathrm{~V}, 200 \mathrm{~mA}$ max. ${ }^{55]}$ |
| 3 | COM (Logic Common) | 0 V |
| 4 | +24 (+24 V Control Supply) | Minimum: 12 V ; Maximum: 30 V Quiescent current: 15 mA typical Is $=210 \mathrm{~mA}$ max. ${ }^{[5]}$ |
| 5 | LI1 (Logic Input 1) | $24 \mathrm{~V}, 10 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> State 0: V < 5 V ; State $1: \mathrm{V}>12 \mathrm{~V}$; Vmax $=30 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| 6 | LI2 (Logic Input 2) | $24 \mathrm{~V}, 10 \mathrm{~mA}$; <br> State 0: V < 5 V ; State 1: V > 12 V ; Vmax $=30 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| 7 | LI3 (Logic Input 3) | $24 \mathrm{~V}, 10 \mathrm{~mA}$; <br> State 0:V < 5 V ; State 1: V > 12 V ; Vmax $=30 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| 8 | LI4 (Logic Input 4) | $24 \mathrm{~V}, 10 \mathrm{~mA}$; <br> State 0:V < 5 V ; State $1: \mathrm{V}>12 \mathrm{~V}$; $\mathrm{Vmax}=30 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| 9 | +10 V Reference Supply | 10 V , Is $=10 \mathrm{~mA}$ max. |
| 10 | Al1 (Analog Input 1: Speed Reference Voltage) | 0-10 V, Z = $30 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ |
| 11 | COM (Speed Reference Common) | 0 V |
| 12 | GND, S (Ground/Shield) |  |
| 13 | AI2 (Analog Input 2: Speed Reference Current) | 4-20 mA ${ }^{[6]}, \mathrm{Z}=250 \Omega$ |
| 14 | COM (Analog Common) | 0 V |
| 15 | AO1 (Analog Output 1) | 0-20 mA, 12 V max. (programmable as 4-20 mA w/ keypad display) |
| 16 | Auxiliary Terminal ${ }^{[7]}$ | Terminal jumpered to Terminal 4 |
| 17 | +115 V (Control Transformer) ${ }^{[7]}$ |  |
| 18 | 115 V Rated Terminal ${ }^{\text {[7] }}$ |  |
| 19 | GND (Control Transformer) ${ }^{[7]}$ |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline 20 \\ & 21 \end{aligned}$ | 120 V SPR Relay Coil 21 [7] | 115-120 V/60 Hz supply (user-supplied) |
| $\begin{aligned} & 22 \\ & 23 \end{aligned}$ | R1 Relay, N.C. Contact (Fault Relay Output) | Minimum: $10 \mathrm{~mA}, 24$ VDC <br> Maximum inductive load of: <br> - 2.0 A, 120 VAC; Max: 0.10 J/operation, 80 operations/minute <br> - 1.0 A, 220 VAC; Max: 0.25 J/operation, 25 operations/minute <br> - 2.0 A, 24 VAC; Max: 0.10 J/operation, 80 operations/minute <br> Arc suppression provided by varistors in parallel w/ relay contacts. |
| $\begin{aligned} & 24[4] \\ & 25 \end{aligned}$ | R2 Relay, N.O. Contact (Run Relay Output) | Minimum: $10 \mathrm{~mA}, 24$ VDC <br> Maximum inductive load of: <br> - 2.0 A, 120 VAC; Max: 0.10 J/operation, 80 operations/minute <br> - 1.0 A, 220 VAC; Max: 0.25 J/operation, 25 operations/minute <br> - 2.0 A, 24 VAC; Max: 0.10 J/operation, 80 operations/minute <br> Arc suppression provided by varistors in parallel w/ relay contacts. |
| $\begin{aligned} & 26 \\ & 27 \end{aligned}$ | Auxiliary Contact (AFC Mode Status) ${ }^{[7]}$ | - 15 A, 125 VAC <br> - 10 A, 250 VAC |

[1] See control circuit diagrams on pages 151 and 152.
[2] All terminals are rated $600 \mathrm{~V}, 30 \mathrm{~A}$ (Class 9080, Type GM6). Maximum wire size for all terminals is 10 AWG ( $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ ).
[3] Relay coil deenergizes on fault.
[4] Contact state with drive controller deenergized.
[5] Total current of +24 V internal supply is 210 mA . Available current of the two logic outputs can be calculated as follows: each input requires 10 mA , each analog output requires 20 mA and the typical quiescent current of LOP is 15 mA .
[6] 0-20 mA, $x-20 \mathrm{~mA}, 20-4 \mathrm{~mA}$ programmable with keypad display. $0-5 \mathrm{~V}(Z=30 \mathrm{k} \Omega)$ selectable with switch on control board. [7] Available only when options are included.

Table 51: Control Terminal Strip Characteristics (Power Circuits Y \& Z)

| Terminal ${ }^{[1] ~[2]}$ | Function | Characteristics |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | LO1 (Logic Output 1) | $24 \mathrm{~V}, 200 \mathrm{~mA}$ max. ${ }^{[5]}$ |
| 2 | LO2 (Logic Output 2) | $24 \mathrm{~V}, 200 \mathrm{~mA}$ max. ${ }^{\text {[5] }}$ |
| 3 | COM (Logic Common) | 0 V |
| 4 | +24 (+24 V Control Supply) | Minimum: 12 V ; Maximum: 30 V Quiescent current: 15 mAtypical Is $=210 \mathrm{~mA}$ max. ${ }^{[5]}$ |
| 5 | LI1 (Logic Input 1) | $24 \mathrm{~V}, 10 \mathrm{~mA}$; <br> State 0: V < 5 V ; State $1: \mathrm{V}>12 \mathrm{~V}$; $\mathrm{Vmax}=30 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| 6 | LI2 (Logic Input 2) | $24 \mathrm{~V}, 10 \mathrm{~mA}$; <br> State 0: V < 5 V ; State $1: \mathrm{V}>12 \mathrm{~V}$; $\mathrm{Vmax}=30 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| 7 | LI3 (Logic Input 3) | $24 \mathrm{~V}, 10 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> State 0: V < 5 V ; State $1: \mathrm{V}>12 \mathrm{~V}$; Vmax $=30 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| 8 | LI4 (Logic Input 4) | $24 \mathrm{~V}, 10 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> State 0: V < 5 V; State 1: V > 12 V ; Vmax $=30 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| 9 | +10 V Reference Supply | 10 V , Is $=10 \mathrm{~mA}$ max. |
| 10 | Al1 (Analog Input 1: Speed Reference Voltage) | 0-10 V, Z = $30 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ |
| 11 | COM (Speed Reference Common) | 0 V |
| 12 | GND, S (Ground/Shield) |  |
| 13 | AI2 (Analog Input 2: Speed Reference Current) | 4-20 mA [6], $\mathrm{Z}=250 \Omega$ |
| 14 | COM (Analog Common) | 0 V |
| 15 | AO1 (Analog Output 1) | 0-20 mA, 12 V max. (programmable as 4-20 mA w/ keypad display) |
| 16 | +115 V (Control Transformer) |  |
| $17^{\text {[8] }}$ | +115 V Rated Terminal |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & 18 \\ & 19 \end{aligned}$ | AFC Mode Select | Normally jumpered or N.C. SPR contact when option is supplied. |
| $\begin{aligned} & 20 \\ & 21 \end{aligned}$ | Bypass Mode Select | Normally jumpered or N.C. SPR contact when option is supplied. |
| $\begin{aligned} & 22 \\ & 23 \end{aligned}$ | Freeze/Fire Stat Interlocks ${ }^{\text {[7] }}$ | Normally jumpered or N.C. SPR contact when option is supplied. Provision for user-supplied N.C. Freeze/Fire state contact. |
| $\begin{aligned} & 24[3] \\ & 25 \end{aligned}$ | Bypass Run, N.O. Contact ${ }^{[7]}$ | Minimum: $10 \mathrm{~mA}, 24$ VDC <br> Maximum inductive load of: <br> - 2.0 A, 120 VAC; Max: $0.10 \mathrm{~J} / o p e r a t i o n$, 80 operations/minute <br> - 1.0 A, 220 VAC; Max: 0.25 J/operation, 25 operations/minute <br> - 2.0 A, 24 VAC; Max: 0.10 J/operation, 80 operations/minute <br> Arc suppression provided by varistors in parallel w/ relay contacts. |

[1] See control circuit diagrams on pages 153-156.
[2] All terminals are rated $600 \mathrm{~V}, 30 \mathrm{~A}$ (Class 9080, Type GM6). Maximum wire size for all terminals is 10 AWG ( $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ ). Tightening torque $7-8 \mathrm{lb}-\mathrm{in}(0.8-0.9 \mathrm{~N} \cdot \mathrm{~m})$.
[3] Relay coil deenergizes on fault.
[4] Contact state with drive controller deenergized.
[5] Total current of +24 V internal supply is 210 mA . Available current of the two logic outputs can be calculated as follows: each input requires 10 mA , each analog output requires 20 mA and the typical quiescent current of LOP is 15 mA .
[6] 0-20 mA, x-20 mA, 20-4 mA programmable with keypad display. $0-5 \mathrm{~V}(Z=30 \mathrm{k} \Omega)$ selectable with switch on control board.
[7] Available only when options are included.
[8] On when bypass contactor is energized.

Table 51: Control Terminal Strip Characteristics (Power Circuits Y\& Z)

| Terminal ${ }^{[1]}{ }^{[2]}$ | Function | Characteristics |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & 266^{[7]} \\ & 27 \end{aligned}$ | 120 V SPR Relay Coil (if used) | 115-120 V / 60 Hz supply (user-supplied) |
| $\begin{aligned} & 28[3] \\ & 29 \end{aligned}$ | R1 Relay, N.C. Contact (Fault Relay Output) | Minimum: $10 \mathrm{~mA}, 24$ VDC <br> Maximum inductive load of: <br> - 2.0 A, 120 VAC; Max: 0.10 J/operation, 80 operations/minute <br> - 1.0 A, 220 VAC; Max: 0.25 J/operation, 25 operations/minute <br> - $2.0 \mathrm{~A}, 24 \mathrm{VAC}$; Max: 0.10 J/operation, 80 operations/minute <br> Arc suppression provided by varistors in parallel w/ relay contacts. |
| $\begin{aligned} & 30[4] \\ & 31 \end{aligned}$ | R2 Relay, N.O. Contact (Run Relay Output) | Minimum: $10 \mathrm{~mA}, 24$ VDC <br> Maximum inductive load of: <br> - 2.0 A, 120 VAC; Max: 0.10 J/operation, 80 operations/minute <br> - 1.0 A, 220 VAC; Max: 0.25 J/operation, 25 operations/minute <br> - $2.0 \mathrm{~A}, 24 \mathrm{VAC}$; Max: 0.10 J/operation, 80 operations/minute <br> Arc suppression provided by varistors in parallel w/ relay contacts. |
| $\begin{aligned} & 32[7] \\ & 33 \end{aligned}$ | Auxiliary Contact (AFC Mode Status) | - 15 A, 125 VAC <br> - 10 A, 250 VAC |

[1] See control circuit diagrams on pages 153-156.
[2] All terminals are rated $600 \mathrm{~V}, 30 \mathrm{~A}$ (Class 9080, Type GM6). Maximum wire size for all terminals is 10 AWG ( $2.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ ). Tightening torque $7-8 \mathrm{lb}$-in ( $0.8-0.9 \mathrm{~N} \cdot \mathrm{~m}$ )
[3] Relay coil deenergizes on fault.
[4] Contact state with drive controller deenergized.
[5] Total current of +24 V internal supply is 210 mA . Available current of the two logic outputs can be calculated as follows: each input requires 10 mA , each analog output requires 20 mA and the typical quiescent current of LOP is 15 mA .
[6] 0-20 mA, x-20 mA, 20-4 mA programmable with keypad display. $0-5 \mathrm{~V}(\mathrm{Z}=30 \mathrm{k} \Omega)$ selectable with switch on control board.
[7] Available only when options are included.
[8] On when bypass contactor is energized.

## SEQUENCE OF OPERATION AND OPTIONS

Terminal Command Mode vs. Keypad Command Mode

This section describes basic sequences of controller operation for the three preengineered power circuit configurations and available options. The options are:

- Power Circuit W: combination package
- Power Circuit Y: bypass package
- Power Circuit Z: remote starter bypass package

In order for factory and/or user supplied pilot devices and controls to be recognized, the Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 combination drive controller is factory configured to operate in the Terminal Command mode. Switching from Terminal Command mode to Keypad Command mode will disable power converter logic inputs. Factory and / or user-provided control devices will be ignored. For this reason, do not operate the Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 drive controller in the Keypad Command mode.

Consult the factory configuration listing on the applicable control circuit diagram (pages 151 to 156), and refer to Chapter 5 before reprogramming logic inputs, outputs, torque types, or control types. Changing certain factory settings will adversely affect the performance of the Class 8839 ALTIVAR 56 drive controller.

## A WARNING

## UNINTENDED EQUIPMENT OPERATION

- Controller has been factory programmed. Alteration of factory programming may create incompatibilities with supplied controller configuration.
- Read and understand Chapter 5 as well as programming information on applicable controller schematics, Figures 91-96.
- If the power converter unit is re-initialized using the TOTAL or PARTIAL FACTORY SETTING function, the power converter must be re-programmed per the programming instructions on applicable controller schematics, Figures 91-96.
- If the power converter unit or the main control board of the power converter is replaced, the power converter must be re-programmed per the programming instructions on applicable controller schematics, Figures 91-96.

Failure to observe these instructions can result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

## POWER CIRCUIT W COMBINATION PACKAGE

## Operator Controls General Arrangement and Operation

Adjustable Speed Operation

Freeze/Fire Stats Interlocks (if used)

MOD B07
Group 2 Pilot Light Cluster (if used)

The Combination Package is designed for running the motor strictly from the power converter. The Combination Package consists of line fuses, 120 V fused control transformer (when control options are present), motor circuit protector disconnect with means for locking in the open position, and a Hand-Off-Auto switch with manual speed potentiometer.

Operator controls are located on the front of the BELE box cover unless option D07 is included. Option D07 omits the Hand-Off-Auto switch and manual speed potentiometer, and no operator controls are present on the BELE box cover. If option B07 is included, a pilot light cluster is also present on the front of the BELE box cover.

The Hand-Off-Auto switch and manual speed potentiometer control the operation of the power converter which is factory configured to operate in terminal command mode.

To operate the controller, the controller disconnect switch located on the front of the BELE box must be in the closed position. There are three modes of operation with the Hand-Off-Auto switch: Hand, Off, and Auto.

Hand mode is for local control. As soon as Hand mode is entered, the power converter is placed in running mode. In Hand mode, the speed potentiometer mounted on the BELE box is used to control the speed of the controller.

Off mode commands the power converter to stop the motor by either following the programmed deceleration ramp (factory setting) or by freewheel stopping.

Auto mode is for remote control. In Auto mode, the power converter is placed in running mode as soon as a user-supplied run contact is closed between controller terminals TB5 and TB8. In Auto mode, motor speed is varied by adjusting the usersupplied auto speed reference signal ( $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ ) supplied to the terminals TB13 (+), TB11 (-), and TB12 (Shield) in the BELE box. Refer to Chapter 5 for scaling of this signal.

Terminals TB4 and TB5 are dedicated terminals for accepting a user-supplied freeze/fire stat interlock (normally closed). The power converter will stop operation if the connection between TB4 and TB5 is opened. Remove the factory jumper wire located on these terminals before installing interlock.

This pilot light cluster provides visual indication of protective functions and circuit status. Listed below are the four pilot lights provided and their functions.

1. Power On (Red): illuminates whenever mains power is applied to the controller. The LED is rated 120 V .
2. AFC Run (Green): illuminates whenever LO1 is high (programmed for running state) to annunciate a drive run condition. The LED is rated 24 V .
3. Auto Mode (Green): illuminates whenever the drive is running in the Auto mode. The LED is sequenced by the Hand-Off-Auto selector switch and is rated 24 V .
4. AFC Fault (Yellow): illuminates whenever LO2 (programmed for fault state) is high to annunciate a drive fail condition. This light is normally not lighted until a controller protective circuit has caused an abnormal shutdown. The LED is rated 24 V .

MOD C07 provides a line isolation contactor factory wired between the line fuses (FU1,FU2, and FU3) and the power converter (L1, L2, and L3). An Open-Close switch is provided on the controller door for controlling the contactor. The line isolation contactor is energized whenever the Open-Close switch is in the closed position.

MOD D07
Omit Hand-Off-Auto Switch and Manual Speed Potentiometer (if used)

MOD D07 omits the Hand-Off-Auto selector switch and manual speed potentiometer. It is used when the user prefers to supply external control devices.

There are a number of ways to sequence the operation of the power converter when the Hand-Off-Auto switch and manual speed potentiometer are not present. Figures 79-82 show recommended sequencing diagrams for commonly used control methods.

Figure 79 can be used for applications in which the power converter start/stop operation is controlled by a user-supplied Auto contact, and the speed is controlled by a user-supplied 0-10 VDC speed reference signal.


Figure 79: Speed Reference \#1 Signal (0-10 VDC) Only
Figure 80 can be used for applications in which the power converter start/stop operation is controlled by a user-supplied Auto contact, and the speed is controlled by a user-supplied 4-20 mA DC speed reference signal.


Figure 80: Speed Reference \#2 Signal (4-20 mA) Only

Figure 81 can be used for applications in which the power converter start/stop operation is controlled by a user-supplied Auto contact, and the speed is controlled by a user-supplied remote speed potentiometer.


Figure 81: Remote Manual Speed Potentiometer Reference Only
Figure 82 can be used for applications in which the power converter start/stop operation is controlled by a user-supplied Hand-Off-Auto switch, and the speed is controlled by a user-supplied speed potentiometer (Hand mode) and a usersupplied 4-20 mA DC speed reference signal (Auto mode).

Figure 82: Remote Wired Hand-Off-Auto and Manual Speed Potentiometer

MOD E07 provides a Canadian Standards Association (CSA) certification label when required by local code requirements.

MOD F07 provides a smoke purge operating mode controlled by a user-supplied 120 VAC signal applied between terminals TB20 and TB21. When 120 VAC is supplied to TB20 and TB21, the drive controller runs the motor at 60 Hz . The jumper between terminals TB4 and TB16 must be removed before using this mode.


MOD E07
CSA Certification (if used)

MOD F07
Smoke Purge Option (if used)

## POWER CIRCUIT Y BYPASS PACKAGE

Operator Controls General Arrangement and Operation

Adjustable Speed Operation

Bypass Operation

Freeze/Fire Stats Interlock (if used)

The Bypass Package allows you to run the motor from the power converter or from full voltage line power (bypass mode). The motor can be run in the bypass mode in the unlikely event the power converter becomes inoperative. The Bypass Package consists of IEC rated isolation and bypass contactors with Class 10 overloads, line fuses, 120 V control transformer, motor circuit protector disconnect with means for locking in the open position, AFC-Off-Bypass switch, Hand-OffAuto switch, and a manual speed potentiometer. A $7 / 16^{\prime \prime}, 1 / 2^{\prime \prime}$, or $9 / 16^{\prime \prime}$ socket hand tool is included for removing line fuses to isolate the power converter during servicing. See "PROPER DRIVE ISOLATION METHOD" on page 150.

Operator controls are located on the front of the BELE box cover unless option D07 is included. Option D07 omits the Hand-Off-Auto switch and manual speed potentiometer, and no operator controls are present on the BELE box cover. If option A07 or B07 is included, a pilot light cluster is also present on the front of the BELE box cover.

The AFC-Off-Bypass switch allows you to select either adjustable speed operation of the motor through the power converter (AFC position) or line power operation of the motor (Bypass position).

The Hand-Off-Auto switch and manual speed potentiometer control the operation of the power converter which is factory configured to operate in terminal command mode.

To control the operation of the motor with the power converter, the controller disconnect switch located on the front of the BELE box must be in the closed position and the AFC-Off-Bypass switch must be in the AFC position. There are three modes of operation with the Hand-Off-Auto switch: Hand, Off, and Auto.

Hand mode is for local control. As soon as Hand mode is entered, the power converter is placed in running mode. In Hand mode, the speed potentiometer mounted on the BELE box is used to control the speed of the controller.
Off mode commands the power converter to stop the motor by either following the programmed deceleration ramp (factory setting) or by freewheel stopping.

Auto mode is for remote control. In Auto mode, the power converter is placed in running mode as soon as a user-supplied run contact is closed between controller terminals TB4 and TB8. In Auto mode, motor speed is varied by adjusting the usersupplied auto speed reference signal ( $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ ) supplied to the terminals TB13 (+), TB11 (-), and TB12 (Shield) in the BELE box. Refer to Chapter 5 for scaling of this signal.

To control the operation of the motor with line power, the controller disconnect switch located on the front of the BELE box must be in the closed position and the AFC-Off-Bypass switch must be in the Bypass position. If the AFC-Off-Bypass selector switch is placed in the Bypass position, motor operation is transferred to line power. If the selector switch is moved to the Off position, the bypass contactor opens and the motor will stop.

Terminals TB22 and TB23 are dedicated terminals for accepting a user-supplied freeze/fire stat interlock (normally closed). The drive output isolation contactor and drive bypass contactor open if the connection between terminals TB22 and TB23 is opened. As a result, the motor will stop. Remove the factory jumper wire located on these terminals prior to installation of interlock.

MOD A07
Group 1 Pilot Light Cluster (if used)

MOD B07
Group 2 Pilot Light Cluster (if used)

MOD C07
Line Isolation Contactor (if used)

MOD D07
Omit Hand-Off-Auto Switch and Manual Speed Potentiometer (if used)

This pilot light cluster provides visual indication of protective functions and circuit status. Listed below are the four pilot lights provided and their functions.

1. Power On (Red): illuminates whenever mains power is applied to the controller. The LED is rated 120 V .
2. AFC Run (Green): illuminates whenever LO1 is high (programmed for running state) to annunciate a drive run condition. The LED is rated 24 V .
3. Bypass Run (Green): illuminates whenever the bypass contactor coil is energized and the motor is running from line power. The LED is rated 120 V .
4. AFC Fault (Yellow): illuminates whenever LO2 (programmed for fault state) is high to annunciate a drive fail condition. This light is normally not lighted until a controller protective circuit has caused an abnormal shutdown. The LED is rated 24 V .

This pilot light cluster provides visual indication of protective functions and circuit status. Listed below are the four pilot lights provided and their functions.

1. Power On (Red): illuminates whenever mains power is applied to the controller. The LED is rated 120 V .
2. AFC Run (Green): illuminates whenever LO1 is high (programmed for running state) to annunciate a drive run condition. The LED is rated 24 V .
3. Auto Mode (Green): illuminates whenever the drive is running in Auto mode. The LED is sequenced by the Hand-Off-Auto selector switch and is rated 24 V .
4. AFC Fault (Yellow): illuminates whenever LO2 (programmed for fault state) is high to annunciate a drive fail condition. This light is normally not lighted until a controller protective circuit has caused an abnormal shutdown. The LED is rated 24 V .

MOD C07 provides a line isolation contactor factory wired between the line fuses (FU1, FU2, and FU3) and the power converter (L1, L2, and L3). The line isolation contactor is energized whenever the AFC-OFF-Bypass switch is in the AFC position.

MOD D07 omits the Hand-Off-Auto selector switch and manual speed potentiometer. It is used when the user prefers to supply external control devices.

There are a number of ways to sequence the operation of the power converter when the Hand-Off-Auto switch and manual speed potentiometer are not present. Figures 83-86 show the recommended sequencing diagrams for commonly used control methods.

The diagram shown in Figure 83 can be used for applications in which the power converter start/stop operation is controlled by a user-supplied Auto contact, and the speed is controlled by a user-supplied 0-10 VDC speed reference signal.


Figure 83: Speed Reference \#1 Signal (0-10 VDC) Only

The diagram shown in Figure 84 can be used for applications in which the power converter start/stop operation is controlled by a user-supplied Auto contact, and the speed is controlled by a user-supplied 4-20 mA DC speed reference signal.


Figure 84: Speed Reference \#2 Signal (4-20 mA) Only

The diagram shown in Figure 85 can be used for applications in which the power converter start/stop operation is controlled by a user-supplied Auto contact, and the speed is controlled by a user-supplied remote speed potentiometer.


Figure 85: Remote Manual Speed Potentiometer Reference Only

The diagram shown in Figure 86 can be used for applications in which the power converter start/stop operation is controlled by a user-supplied Hand-Off-Auto switch, and speed is controlled by a user-supplied speed potentiometer (for Hand mode) and a user-supplied 4-20 mA DC speed reference signal (for Auto mode).


Figure 86: Remote Wired Hand-Off-Auto and Manual Speed Potentiometer
MOD E07 Provides a Canadian Standards Association (CSA) certification label when required by local code requirements.

MOD F07 provides a smoke purge operating mode controlled by a user-supplied 120 VAC signal applied between terminals TB26 and TB27. When 120 VAC is supplied to TB26 and TB27, motor operation is transferred to line power (if not operating in this mode already). The jumpers between terminals TB18 and TB19, TB20 and TB21, and TB22 and TB23 must be removed before using this mode.

POWER CIRCUIT Z REMOTE STARTER BYPASS PACKAGE

## Operator Controls General Arrangement and Operation

Adjustable Speed Operation

Bypass Operation

Freeze/Fire Stats Interlocks (if used)

The Remote Starter Bypass Package allows you to run the motor from the power converter or from a user-supplied, separately-mounted full or reduced voltage starter (bypass mode). The motor can be run in the bypass mode in the unlikely event the power converter becomes inoperative.

The Remote Starter Bypass Package consists of IEC rated isolation and transfer contactors with Class 10 overloads, line fuses, 120 V control transformer, motor circuit protector disconnect with means for locking in the open position, AFC-OffBypass switch, Hand-Off-Auto switch, and a manual speed potentiometer. A $7 / 16^{\prime \prime}, 1 / 2^{\prime \prime}$, or $9 / 16^{\prime \prime}$ socket hand tool is included for removing line fuses to isolate the power converter during servicing. See "PROPER DRIVE ISOLATION METHOD" on page 150.

Operator controls are located on the front of the BELE box cover unless option D07 is included. Option D07 omits the Hand-Off-Auto switch and manual speed potentiometer, and no operator controls are present on the BELE box cover. If option A07 or B07 is included, a pilot light cluster will also be present on the front of the BELE box cover. The AFC-Off-Bypass switch allows you to select either adjustable speed operation of the motor through the power converter (AFC position), or to transfer control of the motor to a user-supplied, remote-mounted full or reduced voltage starter (Bypass position). The Hand-Off-Auto switch and manual speed potentiometer control operation of the power converter which is factory configured for terminal command mode.

To control the operation of the motor with the power converter, the controller disconnect switch located on the front of the BELE box must be in the closed position, and the AFC-Off-Bypass switch must be in the AFC position. There are three modes of operation with the Hand-Off-Auto switch: Hand, Off, and Auto.

Hand mode is for local control. As soon as Hand mode is entered, the power converter is placed in running mode. In Hand mode, the speed potentiometer mounted on the BELE box is used to control the speed of the controller.
Off mode commands the power converter to stop the motor by either following the programmed deceleration ramp (factory setting) or by freewheel stopping.

Auto mode is for remote control and places the power converter in a running mode as soon as a user-supplied run contact is closed between controller terminals TB4 and TB8. In Auto mode, motor speed is varied by adjusting the user-supplied auto speed reference signal ( $4-20 \mathrm{~mA}$ ) supplied to the terminals TB13 (+), TB11 (-), and TB12 (Shield) in the BELE box. Refer to Chapter 5 for scaling of this signal.

To control the operation of the motor with a user-supplied, separately-mounted starter, the AFC-Off-Bypass switch must be in the Bypass position. When the AFC-Off-Bypass selector switch is placed in the Bypass position, motor operation is transferred to the user-supplied starter. If the selector switch is moved to the Off position, the transfer contactor will open and the motor will stop.

Terminals TB22 and TB23 are dedicated terminals for accepting a user-supplied freeze/fire stat interlock (normally closed). The drive output isolation contactor and transfer contactor will open if the connection between terminals TB22 and TB23 is opened. As a result, the motor will stop. Remove the factory jumper wire located on these terminals prior to installation of interlock.

MOD A07
Group 1 Pilot Light Cluster (if used)

MOD B07
Group 2 Pilot Light Cluster (if used)

MOD C07
Line Isolation Contactor (if used)

MOD D07
Omit Hand-Off-Auto Switch and Manual Speed
Potentiometer (if used)

The pilot light cluster provides visual indication of protective functions and circuit status. Listed below are the four pilot lights provided and their functions.

1. Power On (Red): illuminates whenever mains power is applied to the controller. The LED is rated 120 V .
2. AFC Run (Green): illuminates whenever LO1 is high (programmed for running state) to annunciate a drive run condition. The LED is rated 24 V .
3. Bypass Run (Green): illuminates whenever the transfer contactor coil is energized and the motor is running from a user-supplied separately mounted starter. The LED is rated 120 V .
4. AFC Fault (Yellow): illuminates whenever LO2 (programmed for fault state) is high to annunciate a drive fail condition. This light is normally not lighted until a controller protective circuit has caused an abnormal shutdown. The LED is rated 24 V .

This pilot light cluster provides visual indication of protective functions and circuit status. Listed below are the four pilot lights provided and their functions.

1. Power On (Red): illuminates whenever mains power is applied to the controller. The LED is rated 120 V .
2. AFC Run (Green): illuminates whenever LO1 is high (programmed for running state) to annunciate a drive run condition. The LED is rated 24 V .
3. Auto Mode (Green): illuminates whenever the drive is running in Auto mode. The LED is sequenced by the Hand-Off-Auto selector switch and is rated 24 V .
4. AFC Fault (Yellow): illuminates whenever LO2 (programmed for fault state) is high to annunciate a drive fail condition. This light is normally not lighted until a controller protective circuit has caused an abnormal shutdown. The LED is rated 24 V .

MOD C07 provides a line isolation contactor factory wired between the line fuses (FU1, FU2, and FU3) and the power converter (L1, L2, and L3). The line isolation contactor is energized whenever the AFC-OFF-Bypass is in the AFC position.

MOD D07 omits the Hand-Off-Auto selector switch and manual speed potentiometer. It is used when the user prefers to supply external control devices.

There are a number of ways to sequence the operation of the power converter when the Hand-Off-Auto switch and manual speed potentiometer are not present. Figures 87-90 show recommended sequencing diagrams for commonly used control methods.

Figure 87 can be used for applications in which the power converter start/stop operation is controlled by a user-supplied Auto contact, and the speed is controlled by a user-supplied 0-10 VDC speed reference signal.


Figure 87: Speed Reference \#1 Signal (0-10 VDC) Only

Figure 88 can be used for applications in which the power converter start/stop operation is controlled by a user-supplied Auto contact, and the speed is controlled by a user-supplied 4-20 mA DC speed reference signal.


Figure 88: Speed Reference \#2 Signal (4-20 mA) Only

Figure 89 can be used for applications in which the power converter start/stop operation is controlled by a user-supplied Auto contact, and the speed is controlled by a user-supplied remote speed potentiometer.


Figure 89: Remote Manual Speed Potentiometer Reference Only

Figure 90 can be used for applications in which the power converter start/stop operation is controlled by a user-supplied Hand-Off-Auto switch, and speed is controlled by a user-supplied speed potentiometer (for Hand mode) and a usersupplied 4-20 mA DC speed reference signal (for Auto mode).


Figure 90: Remote Wired Hand-Off-Auto and Manual Speed Potentiometer

MOD E07 provides a Canadian Standards Association (CSA) certification label when required by local code requirements.

MOD F07 provides a smoke purge operating mode controlled by a user-supplied 120 VAC signal applied between terminals TB26 and TB27. When 120 VAC is supplied to TB26 and TB27, motor operation will be transferred to a user-supplied, separately-mounted starter (if not operating in this mode already). The jumpers between terminals TB18 and TB19, TB20 and TB21, and TB22 and TB23 must be removed before using this mode.

PROPER DRIVE ISOLATION METHOD

To properly isolate the power converter for service or repair and still operate the controller in Bypass mode, it is necessary to remove the line fuses installed in the BELE box. This procedure applies to Bypass and Remote Starter Bypass Package units (Power Circuits Y and Z).

A $7 / 16^{\prime \prime}, 1 / 2^{\prime \prime}$, or $9 / 16^{\prime \prime}$ socket hand tool is attached in the BELE box and provided for line fuse removal. Before performing any maintenance or service on the controller, review the following precautions and follow all precautions designated on the controller equipment.

## A DANGER

## HAZARD OF ELECTRIC SHOCK OR BURN

- This equipment must be installed and serviced only by qualified electrical personnel.
- Turn off power supplying this equipment before working on or inside equipment.
- Always use a properly rated voltage sensing device to confirm power is off.
- Replace all devices, doors, and covers before turning on power to this equipment.


## DRIVE ISOLATION HAZARD

Before servicing the drive controller:

- Disconnect all power.
- Place a "Do Not Turn On" label on drive controller
- Lock disconnect in Open position.

Before servicing basic power converter when Bypass is selected:

- Perform all functions listed above.
- Measure voltages at disconnect output to verify they are zero.
- Wait 1 minute to allow DC bus to discharge, verify no voltage is present.
- Remove line fuses labeled FU1, FU2, and FU3 with tool provided.
- Replace cover, then close disconnect.

Failure to observe these precautions will result in death or serious injury.

## CONTROL CIRCUIT DIAGRAMS



Figure 91: Combination Package "Power Circuit W" with Options


Figure 92: Combination Package "Power Circuit W" without Options


Figure 93: Bypass Package "Power Circuit Y" with Options


Figure 94: Bypass Package "Power Circuit $Y$ " without Options



Figure 96: Remote Starter Bypass Package "Power Circuit Z" "without Options

## Appendix A - Parameter Summary

This Appendix contains a general summary and description of parameters. Refer to Chapter 5 for complete explanations of the parameters and applicable precautions.

| Parameter | Range | Factory Setting | Description |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Low Speed | 0 to High Speed | 0 Hz | Low speed setting. |
| High Speed | Low Speed to <br> Maximum Frequency | 60 Hz | High speed setting. |
| Acceleration | 0.1 to 999.9 s | 3 s | Length of time to accelerate from zero <br> speed to nominal frequency. |
| Deceleration | 0.1 to 999.9 s | 3 s | Length of time to decelerate from <br> nominal frequency to zero speed. |
| Damping | NOLD: 1 to 100\%; <br> Normal: 1 to $800 \%$ | $20 \%$ | Matches the response of the load to the <br> frequency response of the drive <br> controller by adjusting the integral gain <br> of the frequency loop. |
| Profile | 0 to 100 | 20 | Shapes the V/Hz profile of the output for <br> variable torque applications in normal <br> control type. |
| Motor | 0.45 to 1.15 times <br> Oominal drive controller <br> Overload | 0.9 times nominal <br> drive controller <br> current | Takes speed, time and current into <br> account to calculate thermal overload <br> state. |
| SP Gain | -9999 to +9999 | +9999 | +0 |
| Offset | -9999 to +9999 | 0 to 9999 | 100 |
| KP | 0 to 9999 | 0 | System gain in PI Regulator |
| KI | 0 to $100 \%$ | System offset in PI Regulator |  |
| PI FLT RATIO | Integral gain in PI Regulator |  |  |
| PI SET POINT | -9999 to +9999 | 0 | Limitation of error between desired <br> setpoint and actual process feedback |
| PI SP | 0 to High Speed | Setpoint in PI Regulator |  |
| MANUAL | Manual speed reference with PI <br> Regulator |  |  |

## 2 $\rightarrow$ I/O MAP

## 2.1 $\rightarrow$ Logic Input Map

| Logic Input | Factory Setting | Reassignable |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LI1 | Run enable | No |
| LI2 | Run forward | No |
| LI3 | Auto/manual | Yes |
| LI4 | Auto run | Yes |

## 2.2 $\rightarrow$ Analog Input Map

| Analog Input | Factory Setting | Reconfigurable |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| AI1 | Speed reference1 | No |
| AI2 | Speed reference 2 | Yes |

## 2.3 $\rightarrow$ Logic Output Map

| Logic Input | Factory Setting | Reassignable |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LO1 | At speed | Yes |
| LO2 | Current limit | Yes |
| R1 | Fault | No |
| R2 | Running state | Yes |

## 2.4 $\rightarrow$ Analog Output Map

| Analog Output | Factory Setting | Reassignable |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| AO1 | Motor speed | Yes |
| AO2 | Motor current | Yes |


| Parameter | Range | Factory Setting | Description |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Torque Type | Variable <br> Variable Low Noise | Variable | Type of Torque. |
| Command <br> Type | 2-wire (maintained) <br> 3 -wire (impulse) | 2-wire | Type of control circuit which is wired into <br> the drive controller, affecting operation <br> of the Forward and Reverse inputs. |
| Motor Power <br> (ATV56U41 <br> only) | $.75 \mathrm{~kW} / 1 \mathrm{hp}$ <br> $1.5 \mathrm{~kW} / 2 \mathrm{hp}$ <br> $2.2 \mathrm{~kW} / 3 \mathrm{hp}$ | $2.2 \mathrm{~kW} / 3 \mathrm{hp}$ | Used to select motor power for <br> ATV56U41 drive controller. |

### 7.11 $\rightarrow$ Motor Parameters

| Parameter | Range | Factory Setting | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Nominal Current | 45 to 105\% of drive controller current rating | 90\% | Motor nameplate value for full load current. |
| Nominal Frequency | 60 Hz | 60 Hz | Point on the V/Hz curve beyond which voltage remains virtually constant and only frequency increases. |
| Nominal Voltage | 460 V (ATV56•••N4 units) $208-230 \mathrm{~V}$ (ATV56 $\cdots \cdot \mathrm{M} 2$ units) | 460 V for ATV56•••N4 units <br> 230 V for <br> ATV56•••M2 units | Point on the $\mathrm{V} / \mathrm{Hz}$ curve beyond which voltage remains virtually constant and only frequency increases. |
| Profile | 0 to 100 | 20 | Shapes the V/Hz profile of the output for variable torque applications in normal control type. |
| Damping | NOLD: 1 to 100\%; Normal: 1 to 800\% | 20\% | Matches the response of the load to the frequency response of the drive controller by adjusting the integral gain of the frequency loop. |
| Rotation Normalization | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{ABC}, \\ & \mathrm{ACB} \end{aligned}$ | ABC | Inverts direction of motor rotation without rewiring. |
| Current Limit | Default limit, <br> Alternate value: <br> 40-110\% of nominal drive controller current <br> Current limit by frequency adjustable from $0.1-72 \mathrm{~Hz}$ | Default value: 110\% | Allows alternate current limit value by frequency level, logic input or analog input. |

### 7.12 $\rightarrow$ Control Parameters

| Parameter | Range | Factory Setting | Description |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Maximum <br> Frequency | 72 Hz | 72 Hz | Maximum output frequency. |
| Low Speed | 0 to High Speed | 0 Hz | Low speed setting. |
| High Speed | Low Speed to <br> Maximum Frequency | 60 Hz | High speed setting. |
| Acceleration | 0.1 to 999.9 s | 3 s | Length of time to accelerate from zero <br> speed to nominal frequency. |
| Deceleration | 0.1 to 999.9 s | 3 s | Length of time to decelerate from <br> nominal frequency to zero. |
| Skip <br> Frequencies | Low speed to 72 Hz <br> Skip bands: 2 or 5 Hz | None | Drive controller reference will not stop <br> on the skip frequency which causes <br> mechanical resonance. Up to 3 can be <br> programmed. |

### 7.13 $\rightarrow$ Control Type

| Control Type | Range | Factory Setting |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Variable Torque: | Normal, <br> NOLD | Normal |

## 7.2 $\rightarrow$ Application Functions

| Parameter | Range | Factory Setting | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Preset Speeds | No <br> 1 Preset speed <br> 3 Preset speeds <br> 72 Hz | No <br> (When preset speeds are selected, factory settings are 5, 10 and 15 Hz ) | Input 1 Input 2  <br> 0 0 Low/reference speed <br> 1 0 Preset Speed 1 <br> 0 1 Preset Speed 2 <br> 1 0 Preset Speed 3 |
| Speed Reference | $\begin{aligned} & 0-20 \mathrm{~mA} \\ & 4-20 \mathrm{~mA} \\ & 20-4 \mathrm{~mA} \\ & \mathrm{x}-20 \mathrm{~mA} \end{aligned}$ | 4-20 mA | Modification of AI2 for the type of signal. |
| Auto/Manual | No Yes, Logic input | No | Allows switching between Al1 and AI2 by logic command. AI1 is manual reference. Al2 is automatic. See Figure A-1 and Figure A-2. |
| Controlled Stop | No <br> By Logic input <br> By Frequency level $0.1-72 \mathrm{~Hz}$ <br> By LI /Frequency level $0.1-72 \mathrm{~Hz}$ <br> Stopping Methods: <br> Freewheel stop <br> Fast stop <br> DC injection |  | Allows frequency threshold and Logic Input to work together to tailor the stopping process. |
| Shutdown | No <br> Yes <br> Dwell time: 0.1 to 60 s | $\begin{aligned} & \text { No } \\ & 1 \mathrm{~s} \end{aligned}$ | Allows drive controller to dwell at low speed for a time adjustable between 1 and 30 seconds before completely stopping. |
| Bypass | No <br> Yes, Define I/O <br> Delay time: 0.2 to 10 s <br> Sequence Time-out <br> Fault: 0.2 to 300 s . <br> Process Time-out Fault: $0.2 \text { s to } 300 \text { s. }$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { No } \\ & 2 \mathrm{~s} \\ & 5 \mathrm{~s} \\ & 5 \mathrm{~s} \end{aligned}$ | Used to run machine at full speed when the drive must be taken off line for service or repair. Allows for isolation of the motor by means of a contactor installed between the drive and the motor with a special command sequence. |
| PI Regulator | No <br> Yes, Set Point <br> Feed Back <br> Set Point Manual <br> PI Parameters | No | Used for controlling level or flow of a process with setpoint and feedback inputs |



Figure 97: Auto/Manual in 2-Wire Command with Controlled Stop Active High


Figure 98: Auto/Manual in 3-Wire Command with Controlled Stop Active High

## Appendix B - Menu Summary

This Appendix contains a summary of Level 1 and 2 Configuration Software menus. Use it as a quick reference for menu flow and contents. Refer to Chapter 5 for complete explanations of the menus.


3•FAULLT HISTORY
FHULLT NAHE STA M
IN-FHASE LOSS RIY
AC-LIN, OUERUOL RUN
MOT.OUERLOAI ACC +
ENT to Eet marker

$4 \div$ IISFLAY CONFIG. ONE BRR GRGFH TWO EHR GRHFH SCROLL 4 TAELESL
${ }^{*}$. 8 ENT to modiftu
$5+\mathrm{KEYFAI}$ CONFIG. TERMINAL COHNHAND TERKKY BY LI:__


## Appendix C - Spare Parts

Replacement of spare parts requires the use of special tools and installation procedures not included with the spare parts kits. Before replacing any spare part, consult the Adjustable Frequency Drive Controller Service and Troubleshooting Manual, bulletin no.VD0C06S701_. Spare parts must be removed and installed only by qualified electrical personnel familiar with the Service and Troubleshooting Manual.

## Spare Parts List

| Description | Rating | Drive Controller | Reference No. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Adjustable Frequency Drive Controller Service and Troubleshooting Manual | - | ATV56 all sizes | VD0C06S701 |
| Control Kit (with control basket and keypad) | - | ATV56U41N4 to D79N4 ATV56U41M2 to D46M2 | VX4-A56CK1 <br> VX4-A56CK1 |
| Programming Keypad | - | ATV56 all sizes | Consult factory |
| Removable Control Terminal Strips (for J1, J12, J13) | - | ATV56 all sizes | VZ3-N006 |
| Power Boards | - - - - - - - - - - | ATV56U41N4 ATV56U54N4 ATV56U72N4 ATV56U90N4 ATV56D12N4 ATV56D16N4 ATV56D23N4 ATV56D33N4 ATV56D46N4 ATV56D54N4 ATV56D64N4 ATV56D79N4 | VX5-A56U41N4 VX5-A56U54N4 VX5-A56U72N4 VX5-A56U90N4 VX5-A56D12N4 VX5-A56D16N4 VX5-A56D23N4 VX5-A66D33N4 VX5-A66D46N4 VX5-A66D54N4 VX5-A66D64N4 VX5-A66D79N4 |
|  | - - - - - - - | ATV56U41M2 ATV56U72M2 ATV56U90M2 ATV56D12M2 ATV56D16M2 ATV56D23M2 ATV56D33M2 ATV56D46M2 | VX5-A56U41M2 VX5-A56U72M2 VX5-A56U90M2 VX5-A56D12M2 VX5-A56D16M2 VX5-A66D23M2 VX5-A66D33M2 VX5-A66D46M2 |
| Gate Driver Boards | - - - - - - | ATV56D16N4 ATV56D23N4 ATV56D33N4 ATV56D46N4 ATV56D54N4 ATV56D64N4 ATV56D79N4 | VX5-A66103 VX5-A66104 VX5-A56105 VX5-A56106 VX5-A56107 VX5-A56108 VX5-A56109 |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & - \\ & - \\ & - \\ & - \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D12M2 ATV56D16M2 ATV56D23M2 ATV56D33M2 ATV56D46M2 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VX5-A66112 } \\ & \text { VX5-A66113 } \\ & \text { VX5-A56107 } \\ & \text { VX5-A56108 } \\ & \text { VX5-A56109 } \end{aligned}$ |
| Filter Boards | $\begin{aligned} & - \\ & - \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D16N4, D23N4 ATV56D33N4, D46N4 ATV56D54N4 to D79N4 | VX4-A66103 VX4-A66104 VX4-A66105 |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & - \\ & - \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D12M2, D16M2 ATV56D23M2, D33M2 ATV56D46M2 | VX4-A66103 VX4-A66104 VX4-A66105 |

Spare Parts List (Continued)

| Description | Rating | Drive Controller | Reference No. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Control Power Transformer | - | ATV56D33N4 to D79N4 ATV56D23M2, D46M2 | VY1-ADA604 VY1-ADA614 |
| Screws for mounting power components | $\begin{aligned} & - \\ & - \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D16N4, D23N4 <br> ATV56D33N4, D46N4 <br> ATV56D54N4 to D79N4 | VY1-ADV603 <br> VY1-ADV604 <br> VY1-ADV605 |
| 2 IGBT Modules | $50 \mathrm{~A} / 1200 \mathrm{~V}$ $75 \mathrm{~A} / 1200 \mathrm{~V}$ $100 \mathrm{~A} / 1200 \mathrm{~V}$ $150 \mathrm{~A} / 1200 \mathrm{~V}$ $200 \mathrm{~A} / 1200 \mathrm{~V}$ $300 \mathrm{~A} / 1200 \mathrm{~V}$ | ATV56D16N4 <br> ATV56D23N4 <br> ATV56D33N4 <br> ATV56D46N4, D54N4 <br> ATV56D64N4 <br> ATV56D79N4 | VZ3-IM2050M1201 VZ3-IM2075M1201 VZ3-IM2100M1201 VZ3-IM2150M1201 VZ3-IM2200M1201 VZ3-IM2300M1201 |
|  | $75 \mathrm{~A} / 600 \mathrm{~V}$ $100 \mathrm{~A} / 600 \mathrm{~V}$ $150 \mathrm{~A} / 600 \mathrm{~V}$ $200 \mathrm{~A} / 600 \mathrm{~V}$ $300 \mathrm{~A} / 600 \mathrm{~V}$ | ATV56D12M2 ATV56D16M2 ATV56D23M2 ATV56D33M2 ATV56D46M2 | VZ3-IM2075M0601 VZ3-IM2100M0601 VZ3-IM2150M0601 VZ3-IM2200M0601 VZ3-IM2300M0601 |
| DB Transistor Modules | $\begin{aligned} & 20 \mathrm{~A} / 1200 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 50 \mathrm{~A} / 1200 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 75 \mathrm{~A} / 1200 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 150 \mathrm{~A} / 1200 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D16N4, D23N4 <br> ATV56D33N4, D46N4 <br> ATV56D54N4 <br> ATV56D64N4, D79N4 | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { VZ3-IM1025M1001 } \\ & \text { VZ3-IM2050M1201 } \\ & \text { VZ3-IM2100M1201 } \\ & \text { VZ3-IM2150M1201 } \end{aligned}$ |
|  | $60 \mathrm{~A} / 600 \mathrm{~V}$ $75 \mathrm{~A} / 600 \mathrm{~V}$ $100 \mathrm{~A} / 600 \mathrm{~V}$ $150 \mathrm{~A} / 600 \mathrm{~V}$ | ATV56D12M2, D16M2 ATV56D23M2 ATV56D33M2 ATV56D46M2 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VZ3-IM1060M0601 } \\ & \text { VZ3-IM2075M0601 } \\ & \text { VZ3-IM2100M0601 } \\ & \text { VZ3-IM2150M0601 } \end{aligned}$ |
| 6-Diode Rectifier | $\begin{aligned} & 75 \mathrm{~A} / 1600 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 75 \mathrm{~A} / 1600 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D16N4, D23N4 ATV56D12M2, D16M2 | VZ3-DM6075M1601 VZ3-DM6075M1601 |
| 2-Diode Rectifier | $\begin{aligned} & 80 \mathrm{~A} / 1600 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 100 \mathrm{~A} / 1600 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 160 \mathrm{~A} / 1600 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D33N4 <br> ATV56D46N4 <br> ATV56D54N4 to D79N4 | VZ3-DM2080M1606 VZ3-DM2100M1601 VZ3-DM2160M1606 |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & 80 \mathrm{~A} / 1600 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 100 \mathrm{~A} / 1600 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 160 \mathrm{~A} / 1600 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D23M2 ATV56D33M2 ATV56D46M2 | VZ3-DM2080M1606 <br> VZ3-DM2100M1601 <br> VZ3-DM2160M1606 |
| Fan Sub-Assemblies | Flow 10 CFM <br> Flow 20 CFM <br> Flow 44 CFM <br> Flow 94 CFM <br> Flow 200 CFM <br> Board Fan | ATV56U41N4, U54N4 ATV56U72N4 <br> ATV56U90N4, D12N4 <br> ATV56D16N4, D23N4 <br> ATV56D33N4 to D79N4 <br> ATV56D33N4 to D79N4 | VZ3-V661 VZ3-V662 VZ3-V663 VZ3-V664 VZ3-V665 VZ3-V6654 |
|  | Flow 20 CFM <br> Flow 44 CFM <br> Flow 94 CFM <br> Flow 200 CFM <br> Board Fan | ATV56U41M2 <br> ATV56U72M2, U90M2 <br> ATV56D12M2, D16M2 <br> ATV56D23M2, D46M2 <br> ATV56D23N4 to D46M2 | VZ3-V662 VZ3-V663 VZ3-V664 VZ3-V665 VZ3-V6654 |
| Precharge Resistors | $\begin{aligned} & 33 \Omega / 8.5 \mathrm{~W} \\ & 10 \Omega / 25 \mathrm{~W} \\ & 10 \Omega / 480 \mathrm{~W} \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D16N4, D23N4 ATV56D33N4, D46N4 ATV56D54N4, D79N4 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VZ3-R033W009 } \\ & \text { VZ3-R010W025 } \\ & \text { VZ3-R010W481 } \end{aligned}$ |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & 33 \Omega / 8.5 \mathrm{~W} \\ & 10 \Omega / 25 \mathrm{~W} \\ & 10 \Omega / 480 \mathrm{~W} \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D12M2, D16M2 ATV56D23M2, D33M2 ATV56D46M2 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VZ3-R033W009 } \\ & \text { VZ3-R010W025 } \\ & \text { VZ3-R010W481 } \end{aligned}$ |
| Discharge Resistor | $\begin{aligned} & 5 \mathrm{k} \Omega / 40 \mathrm{~W} \\ & 5 \mathrm{k} \Omega / 40 \mathrm{~W} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D33N4 to D79N4 ATV56D23M2 to D46M2 | VZ3-R5K0W040 <br> VZ3-R5K0W040 |
| Capacitor | $\begin{aligned} & 1500 \mu \mathrm{~F} / 450 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 4700 \mu \mathrm{~F} / 450 \mathrm{~V} \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D16N4, D23N4 ATV56D33N4, D46N4 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { VY1-ADC152V450 } \\ & \text { VY1-ADC472V450 } \end{aligned}$ |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & 1500 \mu \mathrm{~F} / 450 \mathrm{~V} \\ & 4700 \mu \mathrm{~F} / 450 \mathrm{~V} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | ATV56D12M2, D16M2 ATV56D23M2, D33M2 | VY1-ADC152V450 VY1-ADC472V450 |

## Spare Parts List (Continued)

| Description | Rating | Drive Controller | Reference No. |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Capacitor Sub-Assemblies <br> (contain 1 capacitor and <br> 1 <br> 1 balancing resistor) <br> (contains 6 capacitors and <br> 6 balancing resistors) | - | ATV56D54N4 | VY1-ADC605 |
| Current Sensors (2) | - | ATV56D64N4, D79N4 | VY1-ADC606 |
|  | - | ATV56D46M2 | VY1-ADC605 |

## A

AC line overvoltage 55
ACC 55, 62
acceleration 5, 34, 122
acceleration time 59, 75
access levels 56
total lock 56
total unlock 56
access locking switch 52,56
AC-LIN. OVERVOL 45
additional controllers 18
additional motor 39
AFC-off-bypass switch 142, 146
AI1/AI2 terminals 22-23, 26, 135-136
Al2
modifying signal type 79
analog input test 110
analog inputs 23
displaying 61
analog output test 111
analog outputs 23, 26
assigning functions to 99
displaying 61
AO1/AO2 terminals 23, 26
application functions menu 77
at speed 97
auto contact 140, 143-144, 147-148
auto/manu 94
auto/manual 77, 80, 97
autodiagnostics 109
automatic restart 102
AUTO-TEST FAIL 46
auto-test failure 56

## B

bar graphs
displaying 62-64
bele box 117
brake output 99
braking
DC injection 34, 36
dynamic 47
branch circuit 16, 28
BRK 55, 62
bus capacitor voltage 42
bypass $39,77,85,87,142,146$

## C

cable 17
capacitance 17
capacitors
charge relay fault 46
DC bus 42
power factor correction 17
Catch on Fly 103
caution LED 11, 19, 44
circuit diagrams
control 28, 151-156
logic inputs 24
logic outputs 25
CL1/CL2 terminals 20-21
CL21/CL22 terminals 20-21
class 8839 combination devices 117
bypass 142, 144-145
combination 139-140
remote starter bypass 146-148
CLI 55, 62
COM terminal 23-25
command type
menu 67
selecting 67
component failure locating 109
compression lug kit 21
condensation 10, 13
conduit
entries 6
entry plate 18
constant torque 38
contactors
isolation 29
line 30-31
output 39
continuous duty 37
control
board 22
circuit diagrams 28, 151-156
bypass 153-154
combination 151-152
remote starter bypass 155-156
external devices 140-141, 143-145, 147-148
terminals 23, 135-137
three-wire 28
two-wire 28-29
types 34-35, 37-39
voltage supply 20
wiring precaution 17
control parameter menu 74
controlled stop 77, 80
by frequency threshold 81
by frequency threshold \& logic input 81
by logic input 81
controllers
dimensions 6-7, 124-127
disconnect switch 142,146
handling 8, 128
inspection 8, 128
installation 9
specifications 3-4, 122
weight 7, 124-127
CSA label 141, 145, 149
current
level 98
limit 72, 97
nominal 34
overcurrent 45
ratings 3-4, 119-121
CUSTOM. FAULT 47

## D

damping 58-59, 71
DB Resistor 47
DC bus LED 19, 42, 44
DC bus overvoltage 55
DC bus voltage 20, 42
DC injection braking 34, 36, 83
DCB 55, 62
DC-BUS OVERVOL 45
DEC 55, 62
deceleration 5, 34, 122
deceleration time 59, 75
delay time 86
derating 37
diagnostic mode menu 109
dimensions
controller 7, 124-127
recess mounting 13
disconnect switch 10, 142, 146
display configuration menu 62
display screen 53,55
displaying faults 62
drive configuration 66
downloading 113
menu 53
storing 112
drive controller
functions
displaying 62
identification menu 53
initialization menu 112
nameplate information 53, 118
overtemperature 55
parameters 69, 74
status codes 55, 62
thermal alarm 97
driving torque 38
dynamic brake 46, 56 fault 108

## E

enclosures
NEMA Type 1 (IP30) 10
NEMA Type 12 (IP54) 12
sizing 12
environment 5, 9, 13, 122
equipment requirements 30
external control devices 140-141, 143-
145, 147-148

## F

factory default settings
restoring 112
fan 10
also see ventilation 10
flow rates 11
fast stop 83
fault
descriptions 55
detection programming 100
displaying fault type55
history menu 62
LED 19, 44
management menu 100
reset 100, 108
state 97
stop methods 100
troubleshooting procedure 62
types of
control board 46
DB Resistor 47
displaying 62
dynamic braking 46
fault relay 23
ground 46
input phase loss 45, 47
internal connection 46
LEDs 11, 44
memory failure 46
messages 45, 47
overheating 36
overload 45
overspeed 47
overtemperature 45
overvoltage 45
precharge fail 46
relay 23
short circuit 46
signal 46
tachogenerator 47
undervoltage 45
user-defined 47
FB high alarm 95
FB input 91
FB limit 95
FB low alarm 95
FEEDBACK LOSS 47
feedback menu 91
FLT 55, 62
fold back 108
freewheel stop 82
freeze/fire stat interlock 139, 142, 146
frequency
level 198
loop gain 59, 71
output 34
range 5, 122
specifications 4, 122
switching 3-4
FU1/FU2/FU3 line fuses 139, 143, 147
function keys
in keypad command 66
fuses
control 30
line 150
line power 30
power 28
transformer 30

## G

general configuration menu 69
grounding 18, 130
GND terminals 20-21, 134
GROUND FAULT 46, 56

## H

handling 8, 128
hand-off-auto switch 139, 142, 146
omitted 140, 143, 147
user-supplied 141, 145, 149
heat sink 13
help menu 51
high level alarm 91
high speed 59, 75
high torque control 34
hoisting 8, 128
I
I/O extension module 77, 79
I/O map 61
index numbers 51,57
inductors 17
IN-PHASE LOSS 45
input phase failure 107
input phase loss 55
inputs
logic 23-24
phase fault 45, 47
speed reference 5, 23, 26, 122
supply 23
inspection 8, 128
installation 9
INTERNAL FAULT 46, 56
isolation contactor 29

J1 terminals 23, 27
J12 terminals 22-23, 25
J13 terminals 22-23, 26
J2 terminal 20
jump to menu 51

## K

keypad
display 50
connection to drive controller 52
locking 56
mounting in enclosure door 52 remote handheld use 52
command 51, 56, 65
configuration menu 64
keys
arrow 50
ENT 50
ESC 50
function (F1, F2, F3) 51
numeric 50
RUN 52
STOP 51
STOP and RUN key cover 51
selecting 89, 94
KI 95
KP 95
L
L1/L2/L3 terminals 20-21, 134
language
selecting 53
LCD 50
LEDs 11, 19, 42, 44
LI1/LI2/LI3/LI4 terminals 23-24
lightning arrestors 17
line contactor 30-31
line fuses
removing 150
line isolation contactor 139, 143, 147
LO1/LO2/LOP terminals 23, 25, 135-136
local command 56
logic input test 110
logic inputs 23-24
assigning functions to 77
displaying 61
logic output test 110
logic outputs 25
assigning functions to 97
displaying 61
loss of follower 55, 97, 107
LOSS FOLLOWER 46
low level alarm 91
low speed 58, 75

## M

main menu 54
maintenance 44
max. feed back 91
maximum frequency 74
mechanical resonance 76
memory failure 46, 56
menus
application functions 77
command type 67
control parameters 74
diagnostic mode 109
display configuration 62
display screen 53,55
drive configuration 53
drive Identification 53
drive initialization 112
drive parameters 69
fault history 62
fault management 100
general configuration 69
help 51
I/O Map 61
index number 51
index numbers 57
jump to 51
keypad configuration 64
language 53
main 54
motor parameters 69
motor power 67
one bar graph 63
output assignment 96
overview 57
parameter setting 58
torque type 67
two bar graph 64
min. feed back 91
MOD
A07 143, 147
B07 139, 143, 147
C07 139, 143, 147
D07 140, 143, 147
E07 141, 145, 149
F07 141, 145, 149
motor
current 99
overload 55, 58
adjustment 106
MOT. OVERLOAD 45
overload protection 60, 105 for self-cooled motor 106
parameters adjusting 69 menu 69
power
selecting 67
speed 99 adjusting 139, 142 thermal state 99
types continuous duty 37 multiple 39 noise 35 overload fault 45 overload protection 39 overspeed 38 overtorque 37 self-ventilating 37 speed range 37 timing sequence 39 torque 35, 37
mounting
dimensions 7, 124-127
NEMA Type 1 (IP30) 10
NEMA Type 12 (IP54) 12
recess 13
multiple controllers 18

## N

nameplate 16, 118
neg. values 95
NLP 55
noise class 129
NOLD control 35, 37-38
nominal
current 34,70
nominal frequency 70
nominal output frequency 34
nominal output voltage 34
nominal voltage 71
normal control 34-35, 37-38, 76
NRP 55

## 0

offset 89
calculating 90
one bar graph menu 63
open transistor 56
open-close switch 139
operator controls
AFC-off-bypass switch 142, 146
hand-off-auto switch 139, 142, 146
speed potentiometer 139, 142, 146
options
compression lug kit 21
recess mounting kit 13
outputs
analog 23, 26
assignment menu 96
contactor 39
customer supply 23
logic 23,25
motor 20
phase fault 108
phase loss 47, 55
OUT PHASE LOSS 47
power 20
relay 23,27
wiring 17
overcurrent 45
overheating 36
overload
fault 45
protection 39
relay 36-37, 106
overspeed $38,47,56$
overtemperature 45
overtorque 37
overvoltage 45

## P

PA/PB terminals 20-21
parameter setting menu 58
partial factory settings 112
parts list 14, 30, 32, 169
PCMCIA card
downloading from 113
storing to 112
phase
fault 45,47
loss 47, 55
rotation 72
PI (proportional-integral
err output 95
FB output 95
feed back 88, 90
FLT ratio 95
integrator 95
parameters 95
ref output 95
Regulator 77
regulator 88
application examples 91-93
function compatibility 89
using the function 89
set point 88-89
SP manual 88, 94
pilot lights
group 1 143, 147
group 2 139, 143, 147
power
circuit W 139-140
circuit Y 142, 144-145
circuit Z 146-148
control 45
converter 117
fuses 28
input line 43
LED 19, 44
loss fault 101
ratings 3-4, 119-121
supplies
control 20
input line 20
logic inputs 24
logic outputs 25
precharge failure 46,56
preset speeds 77-78
preventive maintenance 44
process
input 86
time out 56
time-out fault 86
profile $58,60,70-71$
programmable relay 23

## $R$

R1/R2 terminals 135, 137
R1A/R1B/R1C terminals 23
R2A/R2B/R2C terminals 23
ramp time 34
ratings 3
208 V 121
230 V 4, 120
460 V 3, 119
ready state 97
RDY 55, 62
recess mounting 13
reference inputs 23
reference signal

$$
10 \text { VDC 140, 143, } 147
$$

4-20 mA 140-141, 144, 146, 149
relays
capacitor charge 46
fault 23, 27
outputs 27
overload 36-37
programmable 23
terminals 23
reset after fault 100
rev. action 95
rev. speed 94
reverse direction 99
ROM memory
testing 109
rotation normalization 72
RST(reset fault) 66
RUN 55, 62
command 139, 142
contact 146
output command 86
running state 97

## S

S terminal 23
safety label 2
SCR 66
scroll function 66
sensors
thermal 11
sequence
input 86
time out 56
time-out fault 86
service factor 37
setpoint (SP)
automatic 94
gain 89, 90
input 89
menu 89
setpoint manual (SPM) 94
shielding 17, 130
shock resistance 5
short circuit 46, 56, 123
shutdown 77, 84
skip frequencies 76
smoke purge option 141, 145, 149
solenoids 17
spare parts 169
specifications 3-5, 122
speed
controlling 140-141, 143-149
potentiometer
manual 139, 142, 146
omitted 140, 143, 147
remote 140, 144, 148
user-supplied 141, 145, 149
range 26,37
reference 77,79
manual 94
inputs 5, 23, 26, 122
start/stop command 140-141, 143-145, 147-148
store user settings 112
supply
control 45
frequency, testing for 109
input (external) 24
input line 43
switching between AI1 and AI2 80

## T

T1/T2/T3 terminals 20-21, 134
tachogenerator 47
terminal command 51
selecting 65
terminal/keypad 97
terminals
+/- 20-21, 43
+10 23, 26
+24 24-25
analog outputs 26
control 23, 135-137
logic inputs 24
logic outputs 25
power 20-21, 134
terminal strips 19, 23, 131-133
thermal
level 198
limit 11
overload 36, 45
overload fault 107
protection 34, 60, 105
three-wire control 28
timing sequence 39
torque
constant 38
driving 38
motor 35,37
overtorque 37
tightening 21
type
selecting 67
menu 67
variable 3-4, 38
total factory setting 112
transformer fuses 30
transient suppressors 30-31
transistor bridge
testing 109
troubleshooting 45, 47
two bar graph menu 64
two-wire control 28-29

## U

U/V/W terminals 20-21
undervoltage 45, 55

## V

V/Hz profile 60, 71
variable torque 3-4, 38
ventilation 10, 13, 37
vibration resistance 5
voltage
+10 V supply 23,26
+24 V supply $23-25$
bus capacitor 42
class 130
control 20
DC bus 20
input line 4, 20, 122
logic inputs 24
output 34
reference input 79
setting 53
volts/frequency 34

## W

weight 7, 124-127
wiring
checking connections 110
class 129
control 17, 28, 135-137
general practices 16, 130
power terminals 21, 134
wire size 21, 134

## Numerics

+/- terminals 20-21, 43
+10 terminal 23, 26
+24 terminal 23-25
10 VDC reference signal 140, 143, 147
2-wire command 68
2-wire control 28-29
3-wire command 68
3-wire control 28
4-20 mA reference signal 140-141, 144, 146, 149


[^0]:    ${ }^{[1]} 10,000$ AIC denoted by asterisk (*).

[^1]:    ${ }^{[1]}$ Resolution limited to processor resolution.
    ${ }^{[2]}$ Drive Controller at operating load and temperature.

[^2]:    ${ }^{[1]} P_{i}=$ power dissipated in the enclosure by a recess-mounted drive controller.

[^3]:    A CAUTION
    DRIVE CONTROLLER SWITCH FAILURE
    For proper drive controller electronic short circuit protection, inductance is required in the output power wiring. Provide at least 48 in $(122 \mathrm{~cm})$ of cable at the drive controller output (U/T1, V/T2, W/T3).
    Failure to follow this instruction can result in equipment damage.

[^4]:    [1] Square D Class CC Fuse Block numbers

[^5]:    ${ }^{[1]}$ Resolution limited to processor resolution.

